

## **REGULATIONS FOR THE DEGREE OF BACHELOR OF SOCIAL SCIENCES (BSocSc)**

*(See also General Regulations and Regulations for First Degree Curricula)*

---

### **Definitions**

- SS1<sup>(1)</sup>** In these Regulations, and in the Syllabuses for the degree of BSocSc, unless the context otherwise requires -
- ‘Core departments’ means the Departments of Geography, Politics and Public Administration, Psychology, Social Work and Social Administration, and Sociology;
  - ‘Non-core departments’ means departments, centres, schools and programmes, other than core departments, teaching in the Faculty of Social Sciences;
  - ‘Department’ means any one of the core and non-core departments;
  - ‘Course’ means a course of instruction which normally carries 6 credits or in some cases 3 credits or multiples of 3, leading to one examination paper as defined in the syllabus;
  - ‘Paper’ means one or more of the following tests: a theoretical examination paper, a practical examination paper, an assessment of field practice, a thesis, and a dissertation, or other assignments as prescribed in the syllabus of the course leading to it;
  - ‘Credits’ means the weight assigned to each course relative to the total study load. The number of credits is indicative of the contact hours and/or study time associated with the course on a weekly basis;
  - ‘Pre-requisite’ means a course which candidates must have completed as specified to the satisfaction of the Head of Department before being permitted to take the course in question.
- 

### **Admission to the degree**

- SS2** To be eligible for admission to the degree of Bachelor of Social Sciences candidates shall
- (a) comply with the General Regulations;
  - (b) comply with the Regulations for First Degree Curricula; and
  - (c) complete the curriculum in accordance with the regulations that follow.
- 

### **Length of study**

- SS3** The curriculum shall normally extend over three academic years consisting of six semesters of full-time study, excluding the summer semesters. Candidates shall not in any case be permitted to complete the curriculum in more than four academic years, which being the maximum period of registration.
- 

### **Completion of the curriculum**

- SS4** To complete the curriculum, candidates shall:
- (a) satisfy the requirements prescribed in UG3 of the Regulations for First Degree Curricula<sup>(2)</sup>;
  - (b) enrol in not less than 180 and not more than 216 credits of courses, unless otherwise required or permitted under the Regulations;

---

<sup>(1)</sup> This regulation should be read in conjunction with UG1 of the Regulations for First Degree Curricula.

<sup>(2)</sup> The specific requirements applicable to candidates of this degree curriculum are spelt out in the syllabuses.

- (c) follow the required number of compulsory and elective courses as prescribed in the syllabuses of the equivalent of normally 60 credits for each year of study. For each semester, candidates shall select not less than 24 and not more than 36 credits of courses except for the last semester of study;
  - (d) take a maximum of 84 credits of junior level courses and the rest being senior level courses as prescribed in the syllabuses over the entire period of studies;
  - (e) take not less than 48 and not more than 78 credits of senior level courses from a single core department except where otherwise stated in the syllabuses.
- 

### **Selection of courses**

**SS5** Candidates who wish to change their selection of courses at the beginning of each semester may do so up to 2 weeks after the commencement of the semester. Requests for changes beyond the 2-week deadline will not be permitted, except for medical or other reasons accepted by the Faculty Board, and candidates' withdrawal from any course without permission will be given a failing grade.

---

### **Assessment and grades**

**SS6** Candidates shall be assessed for each of the courses which they have registered. The assessment may take one or a combination of forms as prescribed in the syllabuses and shall normally include the candidates' coursework during the semester. Only those satisfactorily completed courses will earn credits.

**SS7** Candidates' performance in a course shall be assessed with the grading system as prescribed in UG5 of the Regulations for First Degree Curricula.

---

### **Failure in examination**

**SS8** Candidates who fail in any course may, as directed by the Board of Examiners, be permitted to present themselves for re-assessment with or without repeating the failed course. The timing and the form(s) of re-assessment shall be decided by the Board of Examiners. Candidates shall not be allowed to repeat a course for which they have achieved a passed grade for upgrading purposes, nor shall they be permitted to repeat a course more than once. The failed grade will be recorded in the official transcripts. The new grade obtained after re-assessment of the same failed course will also be recorded and will replace the previous F grade in the calculation of the weighted grade point averages. As failed courses shall not be credited towards a degree, failed compulsory courses must be re-assessed.

---

### **Absence from examination**

**SS9** Candidates who are unable because of their illness to be present for any written examinations may apply for permission to present themselves for a supplementary examination to be held before the beginning of the first semester of the following academic year. Any such application shall be made on the form prescribed within two weeks of the first day of absence from any examination. Candidates who fail to satisfy the examiners in one or more papers in such a supplementary examination shall be considered under the provisions made in these Regulations for failure at the first attempt at the examination, except that a further supplementary examination shall not be permitted.

## **Performance assessment**

**SS10** At the end of each semester, candidates' performance shall be assessed for the purposes of determining

- (a) their eligibility for progression to an award of the degree;
  - (b) their eligibility for the award; or
  - (c) whether they be required to be discontinued from the programme.
- 

## **Progression of studies**

**SS11** Candidates shall be permitted to progress if they have:

- (a) not exceeded the maximum period of registration; and
- (b) accumulated not less than 30 credits and attained a GPA of 1.00 or above over the first and second semesters; or
- (c) accumulated not less than 30 credits and attained a GPA of 1.50 or above over the third and fourth semesters; or
- (d) accumulated not less than 30 credits and attained a GPA of 1.50 or above over the fifth and sixth semesters; or
- (e) attained a semester GPA of 1.50 or above at the end of each subsequent semester.

Those who have not been able to fulfill the requirements above shall be recommended for discontinuation from the programme under General Regulation G12.

---

## **Award of the degree**

**SS12** To be eligible for the award of the degree of BSocSc, candidates shall have:

- (a) achieved a weighted GPA of 1.00 or above;
  - (b) successfully accumulated a minimum of 180 credits; and
  - (c) satisfied the requirements in UG3 of the Regulations for First Degree Curricula.
- 

## **Degree classification**

**SS13** A list of candidates who have successfully completed all the degree requirements shall be published in five divisions: First Class Honours, Second Class Honours Division One, Second Class Honours Division Two, Third Class Honours, Pass. The classification of honours shall be determined by the Board of the Faculty at its full discretion by taking the overall performance of candidates and other relevant factors into consideration.

---

## **SYLLABUSES FOR THE DEGREE OF BACHELOR OF SOCIAL SCIENCES**

---

For candidates admitted in or before the academic year 2003-2004

## **GENERAL FEATURES**

---

### **1. Streams**

Two streams of study, each leading to the award of the BSocSc degree, are available for pursuance. They are: the general stream and the statistics stream. Candidates seeking admission to the BSocSc curriculum will indicate their choices of streams for consideration, in priority order. Offers of

admission to the BSocSc curriculum should specify the stream to which the offer is related. Once admitted to a stream, candidates are not allowed to transfer to another except with the approval of the Faculty Admissions Committee.

---

## **2. Curriculum requirements**

Regulations SS1 to 5 specify the requirements with which candidates have to comply for completion of the BSocSc degree programme. Further details of the requirements are given in the syllabuses.

The programme which normally extends over three academic years of six semesters of full-time study provides candidates with the flexibility of completing their studies within a maximum period of four academic years. Candidates shall enrol in not less than 180 credits of courses for the curriculum. They shall select not less than 24 and not more than 36 credits of courses for each semester. The normal semester load is 30 credits.

---

### *A. Junior-level courses*

Candidates should take all the junior-level courses listed below which include the successful completion of the three language studies courses and the broadening courses as prescribed in Regulation UG3 “Requirements for Graduation” of the Regulations for First Degree Curricula. For the fulfillment of Regulation UG3, candidates shall also obtain a pass in an Information Technology proficiency test, or successfully complete a 3-credit course in Information Technology. Candidates may take additional courses and the maximum number of credits of junior-level courses to be taken is 84.

a) Language studies courses:

ECEN1901. Academic English for Social Sciences	(3 credits)
ECEN2902. English for Professional Communication for Social Sciences	(3 credits)
CSSC1001. Practical Chinese language course for social sciences students	(3 credits)

b) Broadening courses:

Science and technology studies	(3 credits)
Culture and value studies or any inter-faculty electives course outside the BSocSc syllabus	(3-6 credits)
at least one and at most two Broadening courses offered by core departments and School of Economics and Finance	(3-6 credits)

c) Core and non-core introductory courses:

i) five 6-credit courses, one from each of the following core departments:

Politics and Public Administration	
Psychology	
Social Work and Social Administration	
Sociology	
Statistics and Actuarial Science	(30 credits)

ii) one 6-credit course from the School of Economics and Finance (6 credits)

iii) one 6-credit course from a non core department (6 credits)

iv) one 6-credit course from either a core or a non core department other than c(ii) (6 credits)

*B. Senior-level courses*

- a) It is mandatory that candidates should pursue a 'major' or a 'double major' in the case of the general stream.
- i) A 'major' is defined as taking not less than 48 and not more than 78 credits of courses from a single core department listed below:

**General Stream**

Politics and Public Administration

Psychology

Social Work and Social Administration (only Social Administration will be shown on the transcript)

Sociology

**Statistics Stream**

Statistics and Actuarial Science

- ii) a 'double major' is defined as taking not less than 48 credits of courses from each of the two departments or programmes concerned, with the total combined credits from the two departments or programmes concerned not exceeding 108 credits. Candidates may 'double major' from any two of the departments or programmes specified below:

**General Stream**

Any two departments listed in a)i) above; or one of the departments listed in a) i) above in combination with any one of the following:

***Core Disciplinary Second Major***

Statistics and Actuarial Science

***Core Multi-disciplinary Second Majors***

Criminal Justice

Global Studies

Media and Cultural Studies

Public and Social Administration

***Non Core Second Majors***

American Studies

Economics and Finance

History

Linguistics and Philosophy

Philosophy

**Statistics Stream**

Statistics and Actuarial Science in combination with any one of the following:

***Core Disciplinary Second Majors***

Politics and Public Administration

Psychology

Social Work and Social Administration (only Social Administration will be shown on the transcript)

Sociology

***Core Multi-disciplinary Second Majors***

Criminal Justice

Global Studies  
Media and Cultural Studies  
Public and Social Administration

*Non Core Second Majors*  
American Studies  
Economics and Finance  
History  
Linguistics and Philosophy  
Philosophy

b) Minor (optional)

After selecting the appropriate courses to satisfy the 'major' requirement, the remaining courses may be selected from other core or non-core departments/programmes in the Faculty according to candidates' interests. A 'minor' is defined as taking not less than 24 credits unless otherwise specified in the following single core/non-core department/programme approved by the Faculty. Candidates may take at most 30 credits of senior-level courses from non-core departments with the exception of the Programme in American Studies, the School of Economics and Finance, and the Departments of History, Law, and Philosophy. Candidates shall only minor in either Journalism and Media Studies or Media and Cultural Studies.

Core Departments

*Disciplinary Minors*  
Politics and Public Administration  
Psychology  
Social Administration  
Sociology  
Statistics and Actuarial Science

*Multi-disciplinary Minors*  
Applied Child Development  
Criminal Justice  
Family and Child Studies  
Global Studies  
Human Resources Management  
International Business  
Media and Cultural Studies  
Public and Social Administration

Non Core Departments

*Disciplinary Minors*  
American Studies  
Business  
Chinese  
Comparative Literature  
Computer Science and Information Systems  
Economics and Finance  
English  
European Studies  
Fine Arts  
Geography  
History  
Japanese Studies

Journalism and Media Studies  
 Language  
 Linguistics  
 Music  
 Philosophy

*Interdisciplinary Minors*

Histories and Cultures of the Asia-Pacific Region  
 Contemporary China and Hong Kong  
 The West in Asia  
 Critical Thinking, Reading, and Writing  
 The Culture of Business in the Modern World  
 Technology in the Humanities  
 Globalism: Cultures, Spaces, Languages  
 Women and Gender  
 Self-expression, Communication, and the Human Subject

---

**Note:**

- a) For junior-level courses listed above, all of the courses should be taken in the first or second semester of study with the exception of the following:

Courses to be taken in the third or fourth semester of study are:

Professional communication for social sciences  
 Culture and value studies or any inter-faculty elective course  
 Science and technology studies  
 at most one 6-credit core or non-core junior-level course  
 at most one 3-credit broadening course (not applicable to those candidates who have already taken 6 credits in broadening course(s) in the first or second semester of study)

Candidates should ensure that they have taken the relevant junior-level course(s) for the subject in which they intend to major. All junior-level courses should be completed before the fourth semester.

For candidates in the statistics stream, they must take Mathematics and are advised to select Computer Science and Information Systems under categories A c) iii) and iv).

- b) For senior-level courses at B) a) and b) above,

Candidates may take at most 6 credits of senior-level courses in the first or second semester of study, while the remaining should be taken in the third and subsequent semesters of study.  
 For ‘Multi-disciplinary majors’, selection is subject to the compliance with prescribed requirements and acceptance by the Heads of Departments/staff concerned.

- c) Candidates may take at most 12 3-credit courses for the curriculum, while the remaining should be 6-credit or more courses.
- 

**3. Course registration**

Course registration will take place before the commencement of each semester.

Candidates are advised to consult relevant teachers or Heads of Departments on the suitable combinations of courses and to adhere closely to the normal study pattern. Less suitable combinations of courses may not be permitted because of timetabling difficulties. Courses listed in the syllabuses may not necessarily be offered every year; and depending on the exigencies of staffing, additional courses may be offered.

Candidates may change their course selection during the two-week add/drop period which is scheduled at the beginning of each semester. Requests for changes beyond the 2-week deadline will not be permitted, except for medical or other reasons acceptable by the Faculty Board. Candidates' withdrawal from any course without permission will be given a failed grade. In course registration, candidates should pay special attention to the pre-requisite and co-requisite requirements of courses as specified in the syllabuses. A prerequisite is a course which candidates must have completed in accordance with the conditions stipulated by the Head of Department before being permitted to take a course in question. A co-requisite is a course which candidates must take at the same time as the course in question.

---

#### **4. Coursework and examination ratio**

Each 6-credit course leads to one written examination paper which will be two hours in length, or three hours in the case of a 12-credit course, unless otherwise specified. The final grading of each course will be determined by performance in the examination and an assessment of coursework in the ratio of 60:40, unless otherwise specified.

The examinations and assessments of courses carrying weightings other than 6 and 12 credits are detailed in the syllabuses.

---

For candidates admitted in or after the academic year 2004-2005

### **GENERAL FEATURES**

---

#### **1. Curriculum requirements**

Regulations SS1 to 5 specify the requirements with which candidates have to comply for completion of the BSocSc degree programme. Further details of the requirements are given in the syllabuses.

The programme which normally extends over three academic years of six semesters of full-time study provides candidates with the flexibility of completing their studies within a maximum period of four academic years. Candidates shall enrol in not less than 180 and not more than 216 credits of courses for the curriculum. They shall select not less than 24 and not more than 36 credits of courses for each semester. The normal semester load is 30 credits.

---

#### *A. Junior level courses*

Candidates are required to take all the junior level courses listed below which include the successful completion of the three language studies courses and the broadening courses as prescribed in Regulation UG3 "Requirements for Graduation" of the Regulations for First Degree Curricula. For the fulfillment of Regulation UG3, candidates shall also obtain a pass in an Information Technology proficiency test, or successfully complete a 3-credit course in Information Technology. Candidates may take additional courses and the maximum number of credits of junior level courses to be taken is 84.

*For candidates admitted in the academic year 2004-2005*

a) Language studies courses:

- |  |             |
|--|-------------|
| ECEN1901. Academic English for Social Sciences                           | (3 credits) |
| ECEN2902. English for Professional Communication for Social Sciences     | (3 credits) |
| CSSC1001. Practical Chinese language course for social sciences students | (3 credits) |

b) Broadening courses:

- |   |               |
|---|---------------|
| Science and technology studies  | (3 credits)   |
| Culture and value studies or any elective course offered outside the core departments of the Faculty of Social Sciences | (3-6 credits) |

- c) Core and non-core introductory courses:

  - i) four 6-credit courses, one from each of the following core departments:
    - Politics and Public Administration
    - Psychology
    - Social Work and Social Administration
    - Sociology(24 credits)
  - ii) one 6-credit course from the Department of Statistics and Actuarial Science (6 credits)
  - iii) one 6-credit course from the School of Economics and Finance (6 credits)
  - iv) one 6-credit course from a non core department (6 credits)
  - v) remaining credits of courses should be taken from other junior level courses as stipulated in the syllabus of BSocSc (12 credits)

*For candidates admitted from the academic year 2005-2006 to 2006-2007.*

- a) Language studies courses:
    - ECEN1901. Academic English for Social Sciences (3 credits)
    - ECEN2902. English for Professional Communication for Social Sciences (3 credits)
    - CSSC1001. Practical Chinese language course for social sciences students (3 credits)
  - b) Broadening courses:
    - Science and technology studies (3 credits)
    - Culture and value studies or any elective course offered outside the core departments of the Faculty of Social Sciences (3-6 credits)
  - c) Core and non-core introductory courses:
    - i) four 6-credit courses, one from each of the following core departments:
      - Politics and Public Administration
      - Psychology
      - Social Work and Social Administration
      - Sociology (24 credits)
    - ii) FOSS1002. Appreciating social research (6 credits)
    - iii) FOSS1003. Masters in social thought (6 credits)
    - iv) one 6-credit course from a non core department (6 credits)
    - v) remaining credits of courses should be taken from other junior level courses as stipulated in the syllabus of BSocSc (12 credits)

*For candidates admitted in or after the academic year 2007-2008*

- a) Language studies courses:

  - ECEN1901. Academic English for Social Sciences (3 credits)
  - ECEN2902. English for Professional Communication for Social Sciences (3 credits)
  - CSSC1001. Practical Chinese language course for social sciences students (3 credits)

or

  - CUND0002. Practical Chinese language and Hong Kong society (*for Mainland Students only*)

or

  - CUND0003. Cantonese for Mainland Students (*for Mainland Students only*)

- b) Broadening courses:
- |   |             |
|---|-------------|
| Science and technology studies  | (3 credits) |
| Culture and value studies or any elective course offered outside the core (3-6 credits) |             |
| departments of the Faculty of Social Sciences   |             |
- c) Core and non-core introductory courses:
- i) four 6-credit courses from the following five core departments, but not more than one from a single core department:
- |                                       |              |
|---------------------------------------|--------------|
| Geography                             | (24 credits) |
| Politics and Public Administration    |              |
| Psychology                            |              |
| Social Work and Social Administration |              |
| Sociology                             | (24 credits) |
- ii) FOSS1002. Appreciating social research (6 credits)
  - iii) FOSS1003. Masters in social thought (6 credits)
  - iv) one 6-credit course from a non core department (6 credits)
  - v) remaining credits of courses should be taken from other junior level courses as stipulated in the syllabus of BSocSc (12 credits)
- 

*B. Senior level courses*

- a) It is mandatory that candidates should pursue a 'major' or a 'double major' in the case of the general stream.

- i) A 'major' is defined as taking not less than 48 credits (Candidates who major in psychology should register not less than 54 credits) and not more than 78 credits of courses from a single core department listed below:

Geography (For candidates admitted in or after the academic year 2007-2008)  
 Politics and Public Administration  
 Psychology  
 Social Work and Social Administration  
 Sociology

- ii) a 'double major' is defined as taking not less than 48 credits of courses (Candidates who major in Psychology or Japanese Studies should register not less than 54 credits) from each of the two departments or programmes concerned, with the total combined credits from the two departments or programmes concerned not exceeding 108 credits (For the case of Psychology and Japanese Studies major, the number of credits should not exceed 114 credits). Candidates may 'double major' from any two of the departments or programmes specified below:

Any two departments listed in a)i) above; or one of the departments listed in a)i) above in combination with any one of the following:

*Core Multi-disciplinary Second Majors*  
 Criminal Justice  
 Global Studies  
 Media and Cultural Studies  
 Public and Social Administration

*Non Core Second Majors*

American Studies  
 Biochemistry  
 Biology  
 Biotechnology  
 Chemistry  
 Chinese History and Culture (*For candidates admitted in or after the academic year 2005-2006*)  
 Chinese Language and Literature (*For candidates admitted in or after the academic year 2005-2006*)  
 Chinese Studies (*For candidates admitted in or after the academic year 2005-2006*)  
 Comparative Literature (*For candidates admitted in or after the academic year 2005-2006*)  
 Earth Sciences  
 Ecology and Biodiversity  
 Environmental Protection  
 Economics and Finance (*For candidates admitted in or before the academic year 2004-2005 only*)  
 Economics (*For candidates admitted in or after the academic year 2005-2006*)  
 Exercise Science (*For candidates admitted in or after the academic year 2005-2006*)  
 Finance (*For candidates admitted in or after the academic year 2005-2006*)  
 Fine Arts (*For candidates admitted in or after the academic year 2005-2006*)  
 Food and Nutritional Science  
 Geography (*For candidates admitted from the academic year 2005-2006 to 2006-2007*)  
 History  
 Human Language Technology (*For candidates admitted in or after the academic year 2005-2006*)  
 Japanese Studies (*For candidates admitted in or after the academic year 2005-2006*)  
 Language (French/German/Spanish) (*For candidates admitted in or after the academic year 2005-2006*)  
 Linguistics (*For candidates admitted in or after the academic year 2005-2006*)  
 Linguistics and Philosophy  
 Material Science  
 Mathematics  
 Mathematics/Physics (*For candidates admitted in or after the academic year 2007-2008*)  
 Music (*For candidates admitted in or after the academic year 2005-2006*)  
 Philosophy  
 Physics  
 Risk Management  
 Statistics  
 Translation (*For candidates admitted in or after the academic year 2005-2006*)

b) Minor (optional)

After selecting the appropriate courses to satisfy the 'major' requirement, the remaining courses may be selected from other core or non-core departments/programmes in the Faculty according to candidates' interests. A 'minor' is defined as taking not less than 24 credits unless otherwise specified in the following single core/non-core department/programme approved by the Faculty. Candidates shall only minor in either Journalism and Media Studies or Media and Cultural Studies.

Core Departments

*Disciplinary Minors*

Geography  
 Politics and Public Administration  
 Psychology  
 Social Work and Social Administration  
 Sociology

*Multi-disciplinary Minors*  
Applied Child Development  
Criminal Justice  
Family and Child Studies  
Global Studies  
Human Resources Management  
International Business  
Media and Cultural Studies  
Public and Social Administration

Non Core Departments

*Disciplinary Minors*  
Actuarial Studies  
American Studies  
Astronomy  
Biochemistry  
Biology  
Biotechnology  
Business  
Chemistry  
Chinese (*For candidates admitted in or before the academic year 2004-2005*)  
Chinese Language and Literature (*For candidates admitted in or after the academic year 2005-2006*)  
Chinese History and Culture (*For candidates admitted in or after the academic year 2005-2006*)  
Chinese Studies (*For candidates admitted in or after the academic year 2005-2006*)  
Comparative Literature  
Computer Science  
Earth Sciences  
Ecology & Biodiversity  
Economics  
Environmental Protection  
European Studies  
Exercise Science (*For candidates admitted in or after the academic year 2005-2006*)  
Finance  
Food & Nutritional Science  
Fine Arts  
General Science  
History  
Information Management (*For candidates admitted in or after the academic year 2007-2008*)  
Japanese Studies (Japanese Language/Japanese Culture)  
Journalism and Media Studies  
Language (Arabic/French/German/Italian/Portuguese/Spanish/Swedish/Thai)  
Legal Studies  
Linguistics  
Mathematics  
Music  
Philosophy  
Physics  
Risk Management  
Statistics  
Translation (*For candidates admitted in or after the academic year 2005-2006*)

*Interdisciplinary Minors*  
Contemporary China and Hong Kong

Critical Thinking, Reading, and Writing  
 Globalism: Cultures, Spaces, Languages  
 Histories and Cultures of the Asia-Pacific Region  
 Self-expression, Communication, and the Human Subject  
 Technology in the Humanities  
 The Culture of Business in the Modern World  
 The West in Asia  
 Women and Gender

---

**Note:**

- a) Candidates should complete the following courses in or before the fourth semester:
    - Practical Chinese language course for social sciences (in the second semester)
    - Practical Chinese language course for social sciences (in the second semester) or Cantonese for Mainland Students (*for Mainland Students only*) or Practical Chinese language and Hong Kong society (*for Mainland Students only*)
    - Academic English for Social Sciences students (in the first semester)
    - English for Professional Communication for Social Sciences (in the fourth semester)
    - Culture and value studies or any elective course offered outside the core departments of the Faculty of Social Sciences
    - Science and technology studies
    - Foundations to information technology or Information technology proficiency test
  - b) Candidates should ensure that they have taken the relevant junior level course(s) for the subject in which they intend to major.
  - c) For ‘Multi-disciplinary majors’, selection is subject to the compliance with prescribed requirements and acceptance by the Heads of Departments/staff concerned.
  - d) Candidates may take at most 12 3-credit courses for the curriculum, while the remaining should be 6-credit or more courses.
  - e) For the course descriptions, please refer to the BA, BBA , BBA(Acc&Fin), BBA(IBGM), BBA(IS), BBA(Law), BEcon, BEcon&Fin, BFin, BJ and BSc syllabuses.
- 

## **2. Course registration**

Course registration will take place before the commencement of each semester.

Candidates are advised to consult relevant teachers or Heads of Departments on the suitable combinations of courses and to adhere closely to the normal study pattern. Less suitable combinations of courses may not be permitted because of timetabling difficulties. Courses listed in the syllabuses may not necessarily be offered every year; and depending on the exigencies of staffing, additional courses may be offered.

Candidates may change their course selection during the two-week add/drop period which is scheduled at the beginning of each semester. Requests for changes beyond the 2-week deadline will not be permitted, except for medical or other reasons acceptable by the Faculty Board. Candidates withdrawal from any course without permission will be given a failed grade. In course registration, candidates should pay special attention to the pre-requisite and co-requisite requirements of courses as specified in the syllabuses. A prerequisite is a course which candidates must have completed in accordance with the conditions stipulated by the Head of Department before being permitted to take a course in question. A co-requisite is a course which candidates must take at the same time as the course in question.

### **3. Coursework and examination ratio**

Each 6-credit course leads to one written examination paper which will be two hours in length, or three hours in the case of a 12-credit course, unless otherwise specified. The final grading of each course will be determined by performance in the examination and an assessment of coursework in the ratio of 60:40, unless otherwise specified.

The examinations and assessments of courses carrying weightings other than 6 and 12 credits are detailed in the syllabuses.

---

## **CORE DISCIPLINARY AND MULTI-DISCIPLINARY MAJORS AND MINORS OFFERED BY THE FACULTY OF SOCIAL SCIENCES**

### **1. Department of Geography**

- I. (a) Candidates admitted in the academic year 2006-2007 who wish to double major in Geography must successfully complete two junior level 6-credit 'core' courses as meeting the prerequisite requirement and at least 48 credits of senior level courses in Geography from the following list of which GEOG3028 is a 'required' course.
- (b) Candidates admitted in the academic year 2006-2007 who wish to minor in Geography must successfully complete one junior level 6-credit 'core' course as meeting the prerequisite requirement and at least 24 credits of senior level courses in Geography from the following list.
- (c) Candidates admitted in or after the academic year 2007-2008 who wish to major/double major in Geography must successfully complete one junior level 6-credit 'core' course as meeting the prerequisite requirement and at least 48 credits of senior level courses in Geography from the following list of which GEOG3028 is a 'required' course.
- (d) Candidates admitted in or after the academic year 2007-2008 who wish to minor in Geography must successfully complete one junior level 6-credit 'core' course as meeting the prerequisite requirement and at least 24 credits of senior level courses in Geography from the following list.

II. All Geography courses are listed as below:

#### *Junior Level*

##### *Core Courses*

- GEOG1012. Economic and social development in an urbanizing world (6 credits)
- GEOG1016. Nature conservation for sustainable societies (6 credits)
- GEOG1017. Human geography in a globalizing world (6 credits)

##### *Elective Courses*

- GEOG1002. Hong Kong: land, people and resources (6 credits)
- GEOG1003. Contemporary global environmental issues (6 credits)
- GEOG1005. Map use, reading and interpretation (6 credits)
- GEOG1014. Spatial distribution of hazards and disasters (3 credits)
- GEOG1018. Hong Kong's environment: issues and policies (6 credits)
- GEOG1019. Geography field camp (3 credits, not counted as prerequisite)

#### *Senior Level*

- GEOG2004. Atmospheric environment and global climate \* (6 credits)
- GEOG2013. Sustainable development (6 credits)
- GEOG2014. Countryside recreation and management (6 credits)
- GEOG2015. Environmental monitoring and assessment # (6 credits)

GEOG2018.	Transport geography (6 credits)
GEOG2019.	Environmental GIS * (6 credits)
GEOG2020.	Geography of wine # (6 credits)
GEOG2021.	Physical environment of China (6 credits)
GEOG2030.	Global development (6 credits)
GEOG2038.	Climate change and the environment # (6 credits)
GEOG2042.	Urban hydrology and water quality # (6 credits)
GEOG2045.	Retail location * (6 credits)
GEOG2048.	Environmental hazards * (6 credits)
GEOG2050.	Modern environmentalism: society-environment relations* (6 credits)
GEOG2051.	Port and airport development # (6 credits)
GEOG2054.	Urban planning in practice in Hong Kong (6 credits)
GEOG2055.	Water resources and management * (6 credits)
GEOG2056.	Tourism and the shrinking world (6 credits)
GEOG2057.	Leisure and recreation in modern society (6 credits)
GEOG2060.	An introduction to archaeology (6 credits)
GEOG2061.	Cultural heritage management and tourism (6 credits)
GEOG2065.	Urban planning: principles and practices (6 credits)
GEOG2072.	Environmental management: impact assessment (6 credits)
GEOG2073.	Principles of environmental management * (6 credits)
GEOG2078.	Urban geography I: growth, function and pattern of cities (6 credits)
GEOG2079.	Urban geography II: city structure and urban land use models (6 credits)
GEOG2080.	Regional geography of Europe (6 credits)
GEOG2081.	Sustainable urban transport (6 credits)
GEOG2082.	Economic development in rural China (6 credits)
GEOG2083.	Sustainable cities: theory and praxis # (6 credits)
GEOG2085.	North America * (6 credits)
GEOG2086.	China's tourism resources and management (6 credits)
GEOG2088.	China: environment and sustainable development (6 credits)
GEOG2089.	The Pearl River Delta: development and interaction with Hong Kong (6 credits)
GEOG2090.	Introduction to geographic information systems (6 credits)
GEOG2091.	Principles and practice of ecotourism (6 credits)
GEOG2092.	Freight transport management (6 credits)
GEOG2093.	Visitor management in parks, heritage sites, and recreation areas (6 credits)
GEOG2094.	Locational changes of global economic activities # (6 credits)
GEOG2095.	Globalizing China II: economy, society, and regional development * (6 credits)
GEOG2096.	Human impacts on ecosystems * (6 credits)
GEOG2097.	Global landforms * (6 credits)
GEOG2098.	Methods and techniques in spatial analysis (6 credits)
GEOG2099.	Sustainable use and management of soils * (6 credits)
GEOG2100.	People, society and the internet # (6 credits)
GEOG2101.	Globalizing China I: resources, politics, and population (6 credits)
GEOG2102.	Trees for green and liveable cities # (6 credits)
GEOG2103.	Climate change and social responses * (6 credits)
GEOG2104.	Introduction to GIS in health studies # (6 credits)
GEOG2105.	Strategies of transport and infrastructural development * (6 credits)
GEOG2106.	Globalizing greater China: politics, economy, and society (6 credits)
GEOG2107.	Geographical analysis of crime (6 credits)
GEOG2108.	Land economy, administration and resource management (6 credits)
GEOG2109.	Changing population structure in modern society (6 credits)
GEOG2110.	Tourism policy and planning (6 credits)
GEOG2111.	Transnationalism, global citizenship and social cohesion (6 credits)
GEOG2112.	Cultural and social geography (6 credits)
GEOG3009.	Honours dissertation (12 credits)
GEOG3027.	Directed project (6 credits)

- GEOG3028. Overseas field trip (6 credits - required)  
GEOG3035. Advanced urban survey (6 credits)

# Courses are normally offered on alternate odd year basis, i.e. in 2007-08, and 2009-10.

\* Courses are normally offered on alternate biennial even year basis, i.e. in 2008-09, and 2010-11.

---

## **2. Politics and Public Administration**

I. Candidates who wish to major/double major in Politics and Public Administration (PPA) must successfully complete

- a) the following compulsory courses:

- in semester I or II: POLI1003 Making sense of politics (6 credits) (pre-requisite for majors)
- in semester III to IV: POLI0062 Political analysis (6 credits) plus  
one of –
  - POLI0005. Capitalism and social justice (6 credits)
  - POLI0010. Democracy and its critics (6 credits)
  - POLI0015. Ethics and public affairs (6 credits)
  - POLI0067. Liberalism and its limits (6 credits)
  - POLI0071. International political theory (6 credits)

- b) the following major options are available for choice:

- i) standard PPA major:
  - fulfill requirement in a), and
  - take at least 36 credits of senior level Politics and Public Administration courses
- ii) PPA major with a specialist stream:
  - fulfill requirement in a), and
  - take 24 credits of senior level Politics and Public Administration courses in a chosen specialist stream, and
  - take another 12 credits of senior level PPA courses
- iii) Public and Social Administration (details please refer to “Multi-disciplinary Majors within the General Stream”)

- c) the specialist streams of PPA are:

- i) Comparative Politics
- ii) International Politics
- iii) Political Theory
- iv) Public Administration

(Courses affiliated to individual specialist streams are listed in the department's handbook)

- II. (a) Candidates admitted in or before the academic year 2004-2005 who wish to minor in Politics and Public Administration must successfully complete at least 24 credits of senior level courses in this department as specified in the syllabus.
- (b) Candidates admitted in or after the academic year 2005-2006 who wish to minor in Politics and Public Administration must successfully complete the pre-requisite course POLI1003 and at least 24 credits of senior level courses in this department as specified in the syllabus.

III. All PPA Courses are listed as below:

*Junior Level*

- \*POLI1002. Fundamentals of public administration (6 credits)
- POLI1003. Making sense of politics (6 credits)
- (\* this course is regarded as an elective course and not counted towards Major/Minor requirement)

*Senior Level*

- POLI0001. A special topic in political science (6 credits)
- POLI0002. A special topic in political theory (6 credits)
- POLI0003. Approaches to foreign policy analysis (6 credits)
- POLI0004. Bureaucracy and the public (6 credits)
- POLI0005. Capitalism and social justice (6 credits)
- POLI0006. China and Hong Kong: the politics of transition (6 credits)
- POLI0009. Comparative politics (6 credits)
- POLI0010. Democracy and its critics (6 credits)
- POLI0012. East Asian political economy (6 credits)
- POLI0013. Elections and representative democracy (6 credits)
- POLI0015. Ethics and public affairs (6 credits)
- POLI0016. Gender and development (6 credits)
- POLI0017. Government and business (6 credits)
- POLI0018. The Japanese way of politics (6 credits)
- POLI0019. Hong Kong and the world (6 credits)
- POLI0020. Hong Kong politics (6 credits)
- POLI0021. Understanding global issues (6 credits)
- POLI0022. Governing China (6 credits)
- POLI0023. Issues in contemporary Chinese politics (6 credits)
- POLI0024. Issues in public administration (6 credits)
- POLI0025. Managerial skills in public organizations (6 credits)
- POLI0027. Public policy-making: theories and application (6 credits)
- POLI0031. Politics of economic reform in China (6 credits)
- POLI0033. Problems of the Third World (6 credits)
- POLI0034. Public administration in China (6 credits)
- POLI0035. Public administration in Hong Kong (6 credits)
- POLI0037. Managing people in public organizations (6 credits)
- POLI0038. Public policy and democracy (6 credits)
- POLI0039. Public policy analysis (6 credits)
- POLI0040. Public sector management (6 credits)
- POLI0041. Research methods for politics and public administration (6 credits)
- POLI0044. American democracy (6 credits)
- POLI0045. The political economy of the European Union (6 credits)
- POLI0046. Thesis in politics or public administration (12 credits)
- POLI0047. United States foreign policy (6 credits)
- POLI0050. Women and politics (6 credits)
- POLI0051. Issues in Chinese political philosophy (6 credits)
- POLI0052. International relations of East Asia (6 credits)
- POLI0058. Managing the global economy (6 credits)
- POLI0059. China and the world (6 credits)
- POLI0060. Public financial management (6 credits)
- POLI0061. Hong Kong and South China: the political economy of regional development and cooperation (6 credits)
- POLI0062. Political analysis (6 credits)
- POLI0063. Performance and accountability in the public sector (6 credits)
- POLI0064. Governance and law (6 credits)
- POLI0065. Public organization and management (6 credits)

- POLI0066. Public administration and the public (6 credits)  
 POLI0067. Liberalism and its limits (6 credits)  
 POLI0069. Public policy, politics and social change (6 credits)  
 POLI0070. Language and advice in politics and public administration (6 credits)  
 POLI0071. International political theory (6 credits)  
 FOSS0003. Human Security in the global context (6 credits)

Students who choose Politics and Public Administration as first major are not allowed to choose Public and Social Administration as their second major.

---

### **3. Psychology**

- I. Candidates who wish to major/double major in Psychology must successfully complete:

***For candidates admitted in or after the academic year 2006-2007***

- a) Junior level courses:  
 either  
 i) PSYC1001. Introduction to psychology (6 credits); and  
 PSYC1004. Introduction to quantitative methods in psychology (6 credits)  
 or  
 ii) PSYC1002. How the mind works: explorations in basic thinking processes (6 credits);  
 and PSYC1003. Psychology and life: personality and social influence (6 credits); and  
 PSYC1004. Introduction to quantitative methods in psychology (6 credits)

Students who have taken PSYC1001 are not allowed to take either PSYC1002 or PSYC1003 and vice versa.

- b) Senior level courses:  
 At least 54 credits of senior level courses in the Department of Psychology including the following:
- i) **Compulsory course:**  
 PSYC0060. Research and quantitative methods in psychology (taken in 2<sup>nd</sup> year)  
 and  
 Courses taken in 2<sup>nd</sup> or 3<sup>rd</sup> year:  
 ii) 2 courses from the **First Stream:**  
 PSYC0007. Cognitive psychology (6 credits)  
 PSYC0022. Biological psychology (6 credits)  
 PSYC0051. Perception (6 credits)  
 and  
 iii) 3 courses from the **Second Stream:**  
 PSYC0009. Life-span developmental psychology (6 credits)  
 PSYC0010. History and issues in psychology (6 credits)  
 PSYC0019. Psychology of personality (6 credits)  
 PSYC0020. Fundamentals of social psychology (6 credits)  
 PSYC0062. Introduction to psychopathology (6 credits)  
 and  
 iv) 1 advanced lab course from the **Third Stream:**  
 PSYC0008. Advanced cognitive Psychology (6 credits)  
 PSYC0052. Advanced social psychology (6 credits)  
 PSYC0053. Advanced research in I/O psychology (6 credits)  
 PSYC0054. Human neuropsychology (6 credits)  
 PSYC0061. Advanced issues in perception (6 credits)  
 PSYC0064. Advanced developmental psychology (6 credits)

***For candidates admitted in or after the academic year 2003-2004; and before 2006-2007***

- a) either
  - PSYC1001. Introduction to psychology (6 credits)
  - or
  - both PSYC1002. How the mind works: explorations in basic thinking processes (6 credits) and PSYC1003. Psychology and life: personality and social influence (6 credits)

Students who have taken PSYC1001 are not allowed to take either PSYC1002 or PSYC1003 and vice versa.

- b) at least 48 credits (candidates admitted in or after the academic year 2004-2005 should register at least 54 credits) of senior level courses in the Department of Psychology including the following:

**2 compulsory courses:**

Course taken in 2<sup>nd</sup> year:

PSYC0001. Research methods in psychology (6 credits); and

Course taken in 3<sup>rd</sup> year:

either

PSYC3001. Thesis in psychology (6 credits) or

PSYC3002. Advanced research methods in psychology (6 credits)

***(For candidates admitted in the academic year 2005-2006)***

*Note 1: Students have to take one of the following advanced lab courses as a co-requisite for PSYC3001 in the 2<sup>nd</sup> year or 3<sup>rd</sup> year.*

*Note 2: The 3<sup>rd</sup> year compulsory course requirement can also be fulfilled by one of these advanced lab courses, subject to approval by Department Head.*

*PSYC0008. Advanced cognitive Psychology (6 credits)*

*PSYC0052. Advanced social psychology (6 credits)*

*PSYC0053. Advanced research in I/O psychology (6 credits)*

*PSYC0054. Human neuropsychology (6 credits)*

*PSYC0061. Advanced issues in perception (6 credits)*

*PSYC0064. Advanced developmental psychology (6 credits)*

*(Students who have taken PSYC0036 sub-class B "Special topics in psychology" in the academic year 2006-2007 are treated as equivalent to the course PSYC0064 "Advanced developmental psychology".)*

2 courses from the **First Stream** (taken in 2<sup>nd</sup> or 3<sup>rd</sup> year):

PSYC0007. Cognitive psychology (6 credits)

PSYC0022. Biological psychology (6 credits)

PSYC0051. Perception (6 credits)

PSYC0054. Human neuropsychology (6 credits)

and 3 courses from the **Second Stream** (taken in 2<sup>nd</sup> or 3<sup>rd</sup> year):

PSYC0009. Life-span developmental psychology (6 credits)

PSYC0010. History and issues in psychology (6 credits)

PSYC0019. Psychology of personality (6 credits)

PSYC0020. Fundamentals of social psychology (6 credits)

PSYC0062. Introduction to psychopathology (6 credits) (formerly PSYC0034)

II. Candidates who wish to minor in Psychology must successfully complete at least 24 credits of senior level courses in this department as specified in the syllabus.

III. The selection of courses and special topics in psychology available in a particular year is subject to the approval of the Head of the Department. In course registration, students should pay special attention to the prerequisite of courses as specified in the syllabuses. In exceptional cases these may be waived.

IV. All Psychology courses are listed as below:

*Junior Level*

- PSYC1001. Introduction to psychology (6 credits)
- PSYC1002. How the mind works: explorations in basic thinking processes (6 credits)
- PSYC1003. Psychology and life: personality and social influence (6 credits)
- PSYC1004. Introduction to quantitative methods in psychology (6 credits)

*Senior Level*

- PSYC0001. Research methods in psychology (6 credits) [For candidates admitted in or before the academic year 2005-06]
- PSYC0002. Psychological testing and measurement (6 credits)
- PSYC0005. Introduction to counselling and therapeutic psychology (6 credits)
- PSYC0007. Cognitive psychology (6 credits)
- PSYC0008. Advanced cognitive psychology (6 credits)
- PSYC0009. Life-span developmental psychology (6 credits)
- PSYC0010. History and issues in psychology (6 credits)
- PSYC0016. The psychology of stress and health (6 credits)
- PSYC0017. Motivation and achievement (6 credits)
- PSYC0019. Psychology of personality (6 credits)
- PSYC0020. Fundamentals of social psychology (6 credits)
- PSYC0022. Biological psychology (6 credits)
- PSYC0023. Psychology of human communication (6 credits)
- PSYC0029. Cognitive development (6 credits)
- PSYC0032. Engineering psychology (6 credits)
- PSYC0035. Introduction to educational psychology (6 credits)
- PSYC0036. Special topics in psychology (6 credits)
- PSYC0038. Psychology of language and bilingualism (6 credits)
- PSYC0040. Cross-cultural psychology (6 credits)
- PSYC0041. Consumer psychology (6 credits)
- PSYC0050. Knowing and acting in everyday life (6 credits)
- PSYC0051. Perception (6 credits)
- PSYC0052. Advanced social psychology (6 credits)
- PSYC0053. Advanced research in industrial/organizational psychology (6 credits)
- PSYC0054. Human neuropsychology (6 credits)
- PSYC0055. Research internship in psychology I (3 credits)
- PSYC0056. Research internship in psychology II (3 credits)
- PSYC0057\*. Internship in applied child development (6 credits)
- PSYC0058. Cultural psychology (6 credits)
- PSYC0059. Current issues in applied developmental psychology (6 credits)
- PSYC0060. Research and quantitative methods in psychology (6 credits)
- PSYC0061. Advanced issues in perception (6 credits)
- PSYC0062. Introduction to psychopathology (6 credits)
- PSYC0063. Industrial/organizational psychology (6 credits)
- PSYC0064. Advanced development psychology (6 credits)
- PSYC0065. Health psychology (6 credits)
- PSYC3001. Thesis in psychology (6 credits)
- PSYC3002. Advanced research methods in psychology (6 credits) [For candidates admitted in or before the academic year 2005-06]
- PSYC3006. Independent study in psychology (6 credits) [For candidates admitted in or after the academic year 2006-07]

(\* this course is only available for students minor in the Applied Child Development)

#### **4. Social Work and Social Administration**

The Department of Social Work and Social Administration (SWSA) offers a range of courses which can be taken in conjunction with other units in the Faculty to make up the social sciences degree. The courses should be of interest to students who wish to learn about the needs and problems of people, the provision of social services in a society, and who may wish to pursue a career in management and administration, in the government or non-governmental organizations.

- I. Candidates who wish to major/double major in Social Work and Social Administration must successfully complete either SOWK1001 or SOWK1003 and at least 48 credits of senior level courses in this department as specified in the syllabus.
- II. Candidates who wish to minor in Social Work and Social Administration must successfully complete either SOWK1001 or SOWK1003 and at least 24 credits of senior level courses in this department as specified in the syllabus.
- III. All SWSA courses are listed as below:

*Junior Level*

- SOWK1001. Introduction to social administration (6 credits)
  - \*SOWK1002. Introduction to social work (6 credits)
  - SOWK1003. Introduction to social welfare (6 credits)
- (\* this course is regarded as an elective course and not counted towards Major/Minor requirement)

*Senior Level*

- SOWK0002. Working with children and families (6 credits)
- SOWK0007. Working with families (6 credits)
- SOWK0009. Issues and interventions in mental health settings (6 credits)
- SOWK0011. Issues in health care and rehabilitation settings (6 credits)
- SOWK0012. Social welfare in China (6 credits)
- SOWK0013. Social work practice with selected target groups or in specific settings (6 credits)
- SOWK0014. Health administration (6 credits)
- SOWK0020. Oncology, palliative and hospice care (6 credits)
- SOWK0023. Social policy issues in Hong Kong (6 credits)
- SOWK0028. Selected topics in social work practice (6 credits)
- SOWK0029. Comparative social administration (6 credits)
- SOWK0030. Law and social administration (6 credits)
- SOWK0033. Working with youth at risk and juvenile offenders (6 credits)
- SOWK0034. Youth crime and juvenile justice issues (6 credits)
- SOWK0037. Human sexuality (6 credits)
- SOWK0044. Medical knowledge for social sciences students (3 credits)
- SOWK0046. Socio-cultural context of aging (6 credits)
- SOWK0050. Government and politics of social services in Hong Kong (6 credits)
- SOWK0051. Information and communication technology in human services (6 credits)
- SOWK0053. Evaluation of social services (6 credits)
- SOWK0054. Gender and society – a policy perspective (6 credits)
- SOWK0055. Management in human service organizations (6 credits)
- SOWK0057. Aging and society (6 credits)
- SOWK0058. Managing people in human services (6 credits)
- SOWK0060. Career skills training (6 credits)
- SOWK0061. Financial development and management for social service organizations (6 credits)
- SOWK0062. Special topics in policy study (6 credits)
- SOWK0063. Special topics in administrative study (6 credits)
- SOWK0064. Special topics in research study (6 credits)
- SOWK0065. Understanding and working with young people (6 credits)

- SOWK0066. Care management (6 credits)  
 SOWK0068. Social skills training for human service personnel (6 credits)  
 SOWK0069. Counselling in health care settings (6 credits)  
 SOWK0071. Religions and superstitions in everyday life (6 credits)  
 SOWK0074. Teachers as counsellors (6 credits)  
 SOWK0075. Violence in intimate relationships (6 credits)  
 SOWK0076. New age health care in community (6 credits)  
 SOWK0077. International perspective in human services (6 credits)  
 SOWK0084. Theoretical foundations in social policy and planning (6 credits)  
 SOWK0085. Social service research I: methodology (6 credits)  
 SOWK0086. Social service research II: analysis and utilization (6 credits)  
 SOWK0087. Social service research project (6 credits)  
 SOWK0088. Body politics (6 credits)  
 SOWK0089. Family and society – a policy perspective (6 credits)  
 SOWK0091. Current welfare issues in Hong Kong (6 credits)  
 SOWK0092. Adventure-based counselling: theory and practice (6 credits)  
 SOWK0093. Generation Y: youth (sub) cultures (6 credits)  
 SOWK0094. Human service development, promotion, and evaluation (6 credits)  
 SOWK0096. Policy provisions for income protection (6 credits)  
 SOWK0097. Information technology and society (6 credits)  
 SOWK0098. Working with people with disabilities (6 credits)  
 SOWK0099. Separation, divorce and remarriage (6 credits)  
 SOWK0100. Medical aspect of psychiatric illness (6 credits)  
 SOWK0102. Social work in school settings (6 credits)  
 SOWK0103. Counseling in different contexts (6 credits)  
 SOWK0104. Knowing ourselves, knowing our world (6 credits)  
 SOWK2008. Human behaviour and the social environment (II) (6 credits)  
 SOWK3005. Field practicum/project report (12 credits)
- 

## 5. Sociology

- I. (a) Candidates admitted in or before the academic year 2004-2005 who wish to major/double major in Sociology must successfully complete at least 48 credits of senior level courses in Sociology from the following list of which SOCI0001 and SOCI0042 are compulsory.
- (b) Candidates admitted in or after the academic year 2005-2006 who wish to major/double major in Sociology must successfully complete the pre-requisite course either SOCI1001 or SOCI1002 or SOCI1003 and at least 48 credits of senior level courses in Sociology from the following list of which SOCI0001 and SOCI0042 are compulsory.
- II. (a) Candidates admitted in or before the academic year 2004-2005 who wish to minor in Sociology must successfully complete at least 24 credits of senior level courses in this department from the following list.
- (b) Candidates admitted in or after the academic year 2005-2006 who wish to minor in Sociology must successfully complete the pre-requisite course either SOCI1001 or SOCI1002 or SOCI1003 and at least 24 credits of senior level courses in this department from the following list.

III. All Sociology courses are listed as below:

### *Junior Level*

- SOCI1001. Introduction to sociology (6 credits)  
 SOCI1002. Discovering society (6 credits)  
 SOCI1003. Introduction to anthropology (6 credits)

*Senior Level*

- SOCI0001. A history of social theory (6 credits)
- SOCI0002. Class, wealth and poverty: inequality and injustice in Hong Kong (6 credits)
- SOCI0003. Contemporary Chinese society (6 credits)
- SOCI0006. Critical issues in media studies (6 credits)
- SOCI0007. Cultural studies: themes and perspectives (6 credits)
- SOCI0008. Culture and society (6 credits)
- SOCI0009. Economic development and social change (6 credits)
- SOCI0010. Education and teaching (6 credits)
- SOCI0011. Gender and crime (6 credits)
- SOCI0012. Gender and society (6 credits)
- SOCI0013. Gender in Chinese societies (6 credits)
- SOCI0014. Globalization, work and industry (6 credits)
- SOCI0015. Hong Kong popular culture (6 credits)
- SOCI0016. Hong Kong society (6 credits)
- SOCI0017. Japanese economic institutions (6 credits)
- SOCI0018. Japanese society (6 credits)
- SOCI0019. Life styles and modern culture (6 credits)
- SOCI0021. Marriage and the family (6 credits)
- SOCI0024. Modern social theory (6 credits)
- SOCI0027. Politics and society (6 credits)
- SOCI0028. Population and society (6 credits)
- SOCI0030. Quantitative sociological analysis (6 credits)
- SOCI0033. Research project (6 credits)
- SOCI0035. Selected topics in social and cultural anthropology (6 credits)
- SOCI0036. Social anthropology of Hong Kong and Guangdong (6 credits)
- SOCI0038. Social control (6 credits)
- SOCI0041. Social problems (6 credits)
- SOCI0042. Social research methods (6 credits)
- SOCI0043. Sociology of contemporary culture (6 credits)
- SOCI0044. Sociology of economic life (6 credits)
- SOCI0046. Sociology of law (6 credits)
- SOCI0047. Sociology of punishment (6 credits)
- SOCI0048. Sociology of sexuality (6 credits)
- SOCI0049. The body and society (6 credits)
- SOCI0052. Traditional Chinese society (6 credits)
- SOCI0053. Youth and youth culture (6 credits)
- SOCI0054. Triads and organized crime (6 credits)
- SOCI0055. A cultural study of tourisms and tourists (6 credits)
- SOCI0056. Criminal justice: policy and practice (6 credits)
- SOCI0060. Fraud, corruption and computer crime (6 credits)
- SOCI0061. Life styles and religious practices (6 credits)
- SOCI0062. Media development and cultural change in contemporary China (6 credits)
- SOCI0063. Multicultural societies and modern identities (6 credits)
- SOCI0064. Globalization and the information society: myths, facts and emerging patterns (6 credits)
- SOCI0065. Understanding media studies (6 credits)
- SOCI0066. The Asian economic miracles and beyond (6 credits)
- SOCI0067. Crime and the media (6 credits)
- SOCI0068. Religious movements: peace, nationalism and terrorism (6 credits)
- SOCI0069. Perspectives on crime and deviance (6 credits)
- SOCI0070. Chinese identities and global networks (6 credits)
- SOCI0071. Criminology (6 credits)
- SOCI0072. Policy, governance and training in cultural tourism (6 credits)
- SOCI0073. Global migration (6 credits)

- SOCI0074. Disappearing cultures and vanishing heritages (6 credits)  
SOCI0075. Hong Kong: community and cultural policy in the global context (6 credits)  
Special topic in Sociology

**IV. Senior level multi-disciplinary courses:**

The following multi-disciplinary courses can also be counted as Sociology courses for students intending to major or minor in Sociology.

- FOSS0001. Media, culture and communication in contemporary China (6 credits)  
FOSS0005. Globalization and crime (6 credits)  
FOSS0006. Drug control in comparative perspective (6 credits)  
FOSS0011. Researching media and culture (6 credits)  
FOSS0014. Cultural studies and modern societies (6 credits)  
FOSS0015. Sexing culture and identity (6 credits)

Students who choose Sociology as first major are not allowed to choose Criminal Justice as their second major.

---

**The following programmes are offered as second majors to BSocSc students. BSocSc students must declare the first major in one of the four core departments in the Faculty of Social Sciences.**

**6. Criminal Justice (Second Major)**

**I. Objectives**

Crime and its control are among some of the oldest problems facing society. In comparison, criminal justice programme is a relatively recent development, though it is now a commonly accepted part of the university curriculum elsewhere. Criminal justice studies combines a concern for current problems and practices associated with crime control with an understanding of law and social sciences as they are related to criminal justice issues. Candidates will study topics such as criminology, the sociology of law, corrections, social policy, and social administration. The programme seeks to promote an understanding of not only 'how' the criminal justice system operates, but 'why' it should or should not continue to operate in the way it does, and is aimed for students who wish to assume a professional position in the criminal justice system and any one else having a general interest in crime and its control.

**II. Pre-enrolment requirement**

Candidates who wish to major in this programme must have taken or have successfully completed one of the following junior level courses:

- SOWK1001. Introduction to social administration (6 credits)  
SOWK1003. Introduction to social welfare (6 credits)  
SOCI1001. Introduction to sociology (6 credits)  
SOCI1002. Discovering society (6 credits)

Acceptance into the programme is conditional upon satisfactory completion of these courses in particular and subject to places available. Candidates who intend to select optional courses in Law during third and fourth semesters are encouraged to attend [LLAW1008. The legal system (6 credits)] in their first or second semester, in the Faculty of Law.

**III. Programme structure**

Candidates who wish to major in this programme must successfully complete 48 credits of senior level courses from the following list.

- a) Compulsory courses  
SOCI0071. Criminology (6 credits)
- b) Department of Sociology and Faculty  
A minimum of 24 credits of senior level courses from the following list:  
 SOCI0011. Gender and crime (6 credits)  
 SOCI0033. Research project (6 credits)  
 SOCI0038. Social control (6 credits)  
 SOCI0041. Social problems (6 credits)  
 SOCI0046. Sociology of law (6 credits)  
 SOCI0047. Sociology of punishment (6 credits)  
 SOCI0054. Triads and organized crime (6 credits)  
 SOCI0056. Criminal justice: policy and practice (6 credits)  
 SOCI0060. Fraud, corruption and computer crime (6 credits)  
 SOCI0067. Crime and the media (6 credits)  
 SOCI0069. Perspectives on crime and deviance (6 credits)  
 FOSS0005. Globalization and crime (6 credits)  
 FOSS0006. Drug control in comparative perspective (6 credits)  
 Special topic in sociology (6 credits) (The topic covered in this course should be related to crime and criminal justice.)

Candidates who choose SOCI0033 Research project (6 credits) will be required to complete a small research project dealing with some aspects of criminal justice.

- c) Other Departments  
A minimum of 12 credits of senior level courses from the following list:

*School of Economics and Finance*  
ECON0405. The economics of law (6 credits)

*Social Work and Social Administration*  
SOWK0028. Selected topics in social work practice (6 credits)  
SOWK0030. Law and social administration (6 credits)  
SOWK0033. Working with youth at risk and juvenile offenders (6 credits)  
SOWK0034. Youth crime and juvenile justice issues (6 credits)

*Department of Law (some law courses are available to BJ, BSocSc and BSW students only)*  
LLAW2003. Criminal law I (6 credits)  
LLAW2004. Criminal law II (6 credits)  
LLAW3001. Introduction to legal theory (6 credits)  
LLAW3022. Human rights in Hong Kong (6 credits)  
LLAW3047. Hong Kong Basic Law (6 credits)  
LLAW3057. International criminal law (6 credits)  
LLAW3062. Human rights in China (6 credits)  
LLAW3090. Legal aspects of white collar crime (6 credits)  
LLAW3101. Cybercrime (6 credits)

Students who choose Sociology as first major are not allowed to choose Criminal Justice as their second major.

---

## 7. Public and Social Administration (Second Major)

### I. Objectives

The programme is jointly co-ordinated by the Department of Politics and Public Administration and the Department of Social Work and Social Administration. It provides a structured and coherent

course of study in the related fields of public and social administration. It seeks to provide the community with a pool of graduates with specialized knowledge in public administration and social administration to cope with the growing challenges of public sector work and developments in social welfare services.

## II. Pre-enrolment requirement

Candidates must have successfully completed the following junior level courses (6 credits each):

- a) POLI1002. Fundamentals of public administration (6 credits)  
or  
POLI1003. Making sense of politics (6 credits)
- b) SOWK1001. Introduction to social administration (6 credits)  
or  
SOWK1003. Introduction to social welfare (6 credits)
- c) STAT1301. Probability and Statistics I (6 credits)  
or  
STAT0301. Elementary statistical methods (6 credits)

## III. Programme structure

The programme comprises eight compulsory courses as follows:

- a) Department of Politics and Public Administration

Any four courses from the following list:

- POLI0024. Issues in public administration (6 credits)
- POLI0025. Managerial skills in public organizations (6 credits)
- POLI0027. Public policy-making: theories and application (6 credits)
- POLI0034. Public administration in China (6 credits)
- POLI0035. Public administration in Hong Kong (6 credits)
- POLI0037. Managing people in public organizations (6 credits)
- POLI0038. Public policy and democracy (6 credits)
- POLI0039. Public policy analysis (6 credits)
- POLI0040. Public sector management (6 credits)
- POLI0060. Public financial management (6 credits)
- POLI0063. Performance and accountability in the public sector (6 credits)
- POLI0065. Public organization and management (6 credits)
- POLI0066. Public administration and the public (6 credits)
- POLI0069. Public policy, politics and social change (6 credits)

- b) Department of Social Work and Social Administration

All courses from the following list:

- SOWK0023. Social policy issues in Hong Kong (6 credits)
- SOWK0084. Theoretical foundations in social policy and planning (6 credits)
- SOWK0085. Social service research I – methodology (6 credits)
- SOWK0086. Social service research II –analysis and utilization (6 credits)

In the interest of deepening understanding the subject matters taught in this programme, however, students are encouraged to select other senior level electives from the Department of Politics and Public Administration and the Department of Social Work and Social Administration.(For the electives on offer in particular years, please refer to the handbooks of the departments)

From the Department of Politics and Public Administration, students would in particular benefit from taking POLI0062 Political analysis and one of the following courses:

- POLI0005. Capitalism and social justice (6 credits)
- POLI0010. Democracy and its critics (6 credits)
- POLI0015. Ethics and public affairs (6 credits)
- POLI0067. Liberalism and its limits (6 credits)

From the Department of Social Work and Social Administration:

- SOWK0012. Social welfare in China (6 credits)
- SOWK0014. Health administration (6 credits)
- SOWK0030. Law and social administration (6 credits)
- SOWK0034. Youth crime and juvenile justice issues (6 credits)
- SOWK0050. Government and politics of social services in Hong Kong (6 credits)
- SOWK0051. Information and communication technology in human services (6 credits)
- SOWK0053. Evaluation of social services (6 credits)
- SOWK0055. Management in human service organizations (6 credits)

Students who choose Politics and Public Administration as first major are not allowed to choose Public and Social Administration as their second major.

---

## **8. Global Studies (Second Major/Minor)**

### I. Objectives

The saying, "Think global, act local" has become part of our everyday vocabulary. Whether one is drinking a Coca-Cola, standing at an airport security check-point installed after "9/11", or simply contemplating global warming, it is impossible to ignore the impact of our unprecedented levels of global interdependence. How are we to comprehend the ways in which globalization affects our political, economic, social and personal lives? This multi-disciplinary programme of study is designed to help students better understand the multi-dimensional interconnectedness between individuals, societies, and countries that characterizes today's world. It represents a collaboration of core departments in the faculty and is intended to provide students with the foundation for examining the impact of globalization on the world around us from a variety of theoretical perspectives. As this programme of study pays particular attention to issues of Asia and social change in the global context, it is highly relevant for students considering careers in the public and private sectors that require a regional or international focus.

### II. Programme Structure

#### A) Pre-requisite requirement:

Candidates admitted in or after the academic year 2005-2006 who major or minor in this programme should take one of the following junior-level courses (6 credits):

- FOSS1002. Appreciating social research (6 credits)
- OR
- FOSS1003. Masters in social thought (6 credits)

#### B) Core Courses (12 credits)

Candidates who major or minor in this programme should take at least two courses (6 credits each) from the following lists in which one must be a FOSS course. Once the core requirements are filled, other courses from these lists may be taken to fulfill the elective requirement.:

Course code      Course title

**For the first course**, students must take one of these two courses:

FOSS0013. Understanding global issues (6 credits) **or**  
 SOCI0064. Globalization and information society (6 credits)

**For the second course**, students can choose one of the four following courses.

FOSS0003. Human security in the global context (6 credits)  
 FOSS0004. Gender and the global economy (6 credits)  
 SOCI0070. Chinese identities and global networks (6 credits)  
 URBP0001. Cities and globalization (6 credits)

**C) Elective Courses (major: 30 credits; minor: 12 credits)**

Candidates who **major** in this programme should take at least 5 elective courses (6 credits each) from the course list below and no more than 2 from any single department. Candidates who **minor** in this programme should take at least 2 elective courses from the course list below and only 1 from any single department. The following courses are grouped by subject areas.

(i) Globalization and Economic Development

- POLI0005. Capitalism and social justice (6 credits)
- POLI0017. Government and business (6 credits)
- POLI0058. Managing the global economy (6 credits)
- PSYC0041. Consumer psychology (6 credits)
- PSYC0063. Industrial/organization psychology (6 credits)
- SOCI0002. Class, wealth and poverty (6 credits)
- SOCI0009. Economic development and social change (6 credits)
- SOCI0066. The Asian economic miracles and beyond (6 credits)
- BUSI0022. International marketing (6 credits)
- BUSI0026. Employment and labor relations (6 credits)
- BUSI0044. International business (6 credits)
- ECON0501. Economic development (6 credits)
- ECON0503. Urban economics (6 credits)
- ECON0601. Economic development of China (6 credits)
- ECON0602. Foreign trade and investment in China (6 credits)
- FINA0501. Asian financial institutions (6 credits)
- GEOG2030. Global development (6 credits)
- GEOG2045. Retail location (6 credits)
- GEOG2051. Port and airport development (6 credits)
- GEOG2081. Sustainable urban transport (6 credits)
- GEOG2082. Economic development in rural China (6 credits)
- GEOG2089. The Pearl River Delta: development and interaction with Hong Kong (6 credits)
- GEOG2092. Freight transport management (6 credits)
- GEOG2094. Locational changes of global economic activities (6 credits)
- GEOG2095. Globalizing China II: economy, society, and regional development (6 credits)
- GEOG2105. Strategies of transport and infrastructural development (6 credits)
- HIST2027. The foundations of international trade and finance in the modern world (6 credits)
- JAPN2030. Japanese business, culture and communication (6 credits)

(ii) Globalization and Asian Politics and Policies

- FOSS0005. Globalization and crime (6 credits)
- FOSS0006. Drug control in comparative perspective (6 credits)
- FOSS0016. Myanmar in the age of globalization (6 credits)
- POLI0010. Democracy and its critics (6 credits)
- POLI0019. Hong Kong and the world (6 credits)
- POLI0022. Governing China (6 credits)
- POLI0033. Problems of the Third World (6 credits)
- POLI0052. International relations of East Asia (6 credits)
- POLI0059. China and the world (6 credits)
- POLI0061. Hong Kong and South China: the political economy of regional development and cooperation (6 credits)
- SOWK0029. Comparative social administration (6 credits)
- SOWK0062. Special topics in policy study (6 credits)
- GEOG2054. Urban planning in practice in Hong Kong (6 credits)
- GEOG2065. Urban planning: principles and practices (6 credits)
- GEOG2072. Environmental management: impact assessment (6 credits)
- GEOG2073. Principles of environmental management (6 credits)
- GEOG2078. Urban geography I: growth, function and pattern of cities (6 credits)
- GEOG2079. Urban geography II: city structure and urban land use models (6 credits)
- GEOG2090. Introduction to geographic information systems (6 credits)
- GEOG2101. Globalizing China I: resources, politics, and population (6 credits)
- GEOG2104. Introduction to GIS in health studies (6 credits)
- HIST2009. Modern Japan since 1912 (6 credits)
- HIST2039. War and peace: conflicts and conflict resolutions since 1945 (6 credits)
- JAPN2011. Anthropology of Japan (6 credits)
- JAPN2014. China and Japan (6 credits)
- LLAW3062. Human rights in China (6 credits)
- LLAW3091. Ethnicity, human rights, & democracy (6 credits)

(iii) Globalization and Asian Cultures and Societies

- PSYC0020. Fundamentals of social psychology (6 credits)
- SOCI0003. Contemporary Chinese society (6 credits)
- SOCI0055. A cultural study of tourism and tourists (6 credits)
- SOCI0061. Lifestyles and religious practices (6 credits)
- SOWK0012. Social welfare in China (6 credits)
- SOWK0057. Aging and society (6 credits)
- BCTC0002. Life and Buddhism (6 credits)
- CLIT2045. Colonialism/ postcolonialism (6 credits)
- CLIT2050. Globalization and culture (6 credits)
- ENGL2045. Travel writing.(6 credits)
- ENGL2066. Orientalism and linguistics (6 credits)
- FINE2029. Modernity and its discontents (6 credits)
- FINE2030. Towards the global (6 credits)
- FINE2033. Cross-cultural interaction in the 19th century (6 credits)
- HIST2064. Sweat and abacus: overseas Chinese in Southeast Asia (6 credits)
- GEOG2013. Sustainable development (6 credits)
- GEOG2014. Countryside recreation and management (6 credits)
- GEOG2050. Modern environmentalism: society-environment relations (6 credits)
- GEOG2056. Tourism and the shrinking world (6 credits)
- GEOG2083. Sustainable cities: theory and praxis (6 credits)
- GEOG2086. China's tourism resources and management (6 credits)
- GEOG2088. China: environment and sustainable development (6 credits)

- GEOG2089. The Pearl River Delta: development and interaction with Hong Kong (6 credits)  
 GEOG2096. Human impacts on ecosystems (6 credits)  
 GEOG2100. People, society and the internet (6 credits)  
 GEOG2102. Trees and green liveable cities (6 credits)  
 GEOG2103. Climate change and social responses (6 credits)  
 GEOG3035. Advanced urban survey (6 credits)  
 JAPN2035. Women in Japan and Hong Kong (6 credits)  
 LING2011. Language and literacy in the information age (6 credits)

D) Research project / Internship (6 credits) (For major only)

It is compulsory for all final year candidates who major in this programme to undertake either a year-long independent research project or an internship programme. It is designed to offer major students a chance to apply their theoretical training to a real world issue.

- FOSS3003. Research project in global studies (6 credits)  
 OR  
 FOSS3005. Internship in global studies (6 credits)
- 

## **9. Media and Cultural Studies (Second Major/Minor)**

### I. Objectives:

The media are central to our experience and identities in today's modern world. We find ourselves increasingly saturated by messages and ideas from television, radio, print media, advertisement, cinema and the internet. The media not only shape our education, politics, art and entertainment, constituting our worldviews, identities and fantasies, they also help to connect and divide communities locally, nationally and globally. Their influences are further complicated by the rise of new information technology and the globalization of outlook and resources, posing us new demands and challenges. To what extent will those changes result in a multiplicity of lifestyles and identities? Are we getting more homogenized and westernized? Questions of this kind are under considerable discussion in the social sciences as it becomes clear that culture, life-styles as well as class, gender and ethnic identities are the grounds on which economic, social and political forces of the new era work themselves out. In this programme, the connections between individuals, their communities, and the world, mediated by culture and the media, are now being examined in relation to global versus local, modern versus tradition, diaspora versus nationalism, and culture versus market.

This multidisciplinary programme of study represents the collaboration of the core departments in the Faculty and other departments in the University and is intended to provide students with the foundation for examining the role of media and culture in today's society from a variety of perspectives. It is principally concerned with developing informed and critical understanding and responses to the media and culture and considering the relationships between the two. It enables students to engage with issues concerning the relationship between culture and identity, forms of representation, and the role of media in shaping the ways we live in class discussion and project presentation. It also equips students with useful tools and analytical skills to researching media and culture.

### II. Programme Structure

#### A) Pre-requisite requirement

Candidates admitted in or after the academic year 2005-2006 who major or minor in this programme should take one of the following junior-level courses (6 credits):

- FOSS1002. Appreciating social research (6 credits)  
 OR  
 FOSS1003. Masters in social thought (6 credits)

**B) Core Courses (12 credits)**

Candidates who major or minor in this programme should take at least two core courses (6 credits each) from the following list in which one must be a FOSS course. They may take more than two courses from the list and the rest will be counted as elective course(s) for major/minor requirements.

Course Code	Course title
FOSS0001.	Media, culture, and communication in contemporary China (6 credits)
FOSS0011.	Researching media and culture (6 credits)
FOSS0014.	Cultural studies and modern societies (6 credits)
FOSS0015.	Sexing culture and identity (6 credits)
PSYC0058.	Cultural psychology (6 credits)
SOCI0065.	Understanding media studies (6 credits)

**C) Elective Courses (major: 30 credits; minor: 12 credits)**

Candidates who major in this programme should take at least 5 elective courses (6 credits each) from the courses listed for the programme and no more than 2 from any single department. Those who minor in this programme should take at least 2 elective courses listed and only one from any single department. To facilitate students to make their choices, courses are grouped together under different themes:

**(i) Culture and Identity**

Course Code	Course title
PSYC0020.	Fundamentals of social psychology (6 credits)
PSYC0050.	Knowing and acting in everyday life (6 credits)
SOCI0008.	Culture and society (6 credits)
SOCI0012.	Gender and society (6 credits)
SOCI0015.	Hong Kong popular culture (6 credits)
SOCI0019.	Life styles and modern culture (6 credits)
SOCI0055.	A cultural study of tourisms and tourists (6 credits)
SOCI0064.	Globalization and information Society (6 credits)
SOCI0072.	Policy, governance and training in cultural tourism (6 credits)
AMER2014.	A dream in the heart: Varieties of Asian American culture
CLIT2050.	Globalization and culture
CLIT2052.	Chinese urban culture (6 credits)
CLIT2069.	The making of modern masculinities (6 credits)
CLIT2076.	Fashioning femininities (6 credits)
ENGL2095.	The East: Asia in English writing (6 credits)
ENGL2099.	Language, identity, and Asian Americans (6 credits)
EUST2010.	European identity (6 credits)
FINE2031.	The rise of modern architecture in Western culture (6 credits)
FINE2033.	Cross-cultural interaction in the 19 <sup>th</sup> Century (6 credits)
GEOG2020.	Geography of wine (6 credits)
GEOG2050.	Modern environmentalism: society-environment relations (6 credits)
GEOG2056.	Tourism and the shrinking world (6 credits)
GEOG2057.	Leisure and recreation in modern society (6 credits)
GEOG2060.	An introduction to archaeology (6 credits)
GEOG2061.	Cultural heritage management and tourism (6 credits)
GEOG2080.	Regional geography of Europe (6 credits)
GEOG2083.	Sustainable cities: theory and praxis (6 credits)
GEOG2085.	North America (6 credits)
GEOG2091.	Principles and practice of ecotourism (6 credits)
GEOG2093.	Visitor management in parks, heritage sites, and recreation areas (6 credits)
GEOG2100.	People, society and the internet (6 credits)
GEOG2102.	Trees and green liveable cities (6 credits)
GEOG3035.	Advanced urban survey (6 credits)
HIST2046.	The modern European city: Urban living and open spaces (6 credits)

- HIST2048. The history of young people in modern Europe (6 credits)  
 HIST2062. From Empire to EU: culture, politics and society in twentieth century Britain (6 credits)  
 JAPN2011. Anthropology of Japan (6 credits)  
 JAPN2018. Popular culture and artistic activity in Japan (6 credits)  
 JAPN2035. Women in Japan and Hong Kong (6 credits)

(ii) Media and Communication

- PSYC0023. Psychology of human communication (6 credits)  
 PSYC0041. Consumer psychology (6 credits)  
 SOCI0006. Critical issues in media studies (6 credits)  
 SOCI0067. Crime and the media (6 credits)  
 AMER2022. What's on TV? Television and American culture (6 credits)  
 CLIT2007. Film culture I (6 credits)  
 CLIT2008. Film culture II (6 credits)  
 CLIT2074. Film and ideology in post-Mao China (6 credits)  
 JAPN2029. Japanese popular music and Hong Kong society (6 credits)  
 JAPN2031. The media and Japan (6 credits)  
 JMSC0008. Multi-media production (6 credits)  
 JMSC0019. Media law and ethics (6 credits)  
 JMSC0025. Journalism traditions (6 credits)  
 JMSC0027. The press, politics and government (6 credits)  
 JMSC0034. Covering China (6 credits)  
 LING2044. Language and culture (6 credits)  
 MUSI2016. Music of contemporary Hong Kong (6 credits)  
 MUSI2019. Music in society (3 credits)  
 MUSI2044. Film music (6 credits)  
 PHIL2610. Philosophy of language (6 credits)

D) Research project/Internship (6 credits) (For major only)

It is compulsory for all final year candidates who major in this programme to undertake either a year-long independent research project or an internship programme. It is designed to offer major students a chance to apply their theoretical training to a real world issue.

- FOSS3004. Research project in media and cultural studies (6 credits)  
 OR  
 FOSS3006. Internship in media and cultural studies (6 credits)

**CORE DISCIPLINARY AND MULTI-DISCIPLINARY MINORS OFFERED BY THE FACULTY OF SOCIAL SCIENCES**

Please note that one course cannot be taken to fulfill both the requirements for a major and a minor.

**1. Journalism and Media Studies**

Candidates who wish to minor in Journalism and Media Studies must successfully complete at least 24 credits of senior level courses from the following course list. As a pre-requisite, candidates must pass JMSC0101. 'Principles of journalism and the news media'.

- JMSC0002. News reporting and writing workshop (6 credits)  
 JMSC0007. New media workshop (6 credits)  
 JMSC0008. Multimedia production (6 credits)  
 JMSC0017. Feature writing (6 credits)

- JMSC0018. Chinese news writing (6 credits)
  - JMSC0019. Media law and ethics (6 credits)
  - JMSC0025. Journalism traditions (6 credits)
  - JMSC0026. Independent study (6 credits)
  - JMSC0027. The press, politics and government (6 credits)
  - JMSC0033. Literary journalism (6 credits)
  - JMSC0034. Covering China (6 credits)
  - JMSC0037. Advanced Chinese news writing (6 credits)
  - JMSC0038. Visual journalism (6 credits)
  - JMSC0042. International news (6 credits)
  - JMSC0043. Reporting public health issues (6 credits)
  - JMSC0044. Special topics in journalism I (6 credits)
  - JMSC0045. Special topics in journalism II (6 credits)
  - JMSC0046. Introduction to television (6 credits)
  - JMSC0051. Television news writing (6 credits)
  - JMSC0052. Television news production (6 credits)
  - JMSC0053. Radio news production (6 credits)
  - JMSC0054. Public affairs reporting (6 credits)
  - JMSC0055. Specialised reporting (6 credits)
  - JMSC0056. Business and financial reporting (6 credits)
  - JMSC0057. Magazine writing (6 credits)
  - JMSC0058. Impact of new media on society (6 credits)
  - JMSC0059. Covering the environment (6 credits)
- 

## **2. Applied Child Development (Faculty of Education and Department of Psychology)**

This minor offers a coherent academic programme focusing on the knowledge, attitudes and skills central to improving the well-being of children and their families. Specifically, the minor will (i) help you acquire scientifically-based knowledge about early childhood development and education; and (ii) enable you to apply theories, research methods, and research findings to practical concerns.

- PSYC0009. Life-span developmental psychology (6 credits)
  - EDUC8001. Understanding and guiding the development of young children (6 credits)
  - EDUC8002. Planning, managing and assessing services for young children (6 credits)
  - PSYC0057. Internship in applied child development (6 credits)
- 

## **3. Criminal Justice**

Candidates who minor in this programme are required to take 4 courses (24 credits) from the following list and which one or more must be from outside the Department of Sociology:

- a) Compulsory course  
SOCI0071. Criminology (6 credits)
- b) Elective courses (A maximum of 12 credits of courses to be chosen from the following list):  
Department of Sociology and Faculty
  - SOCI0011. Gender and crime (6 credits)
  - SOCI0038. Social control (6 credits)
  - SOCI0041. Social problems (6 credits)
  - SOCI0046. Sociology of law (6 credits)
  - SOCI0047. Sociology of punishment (6 credits)
  - SOCI0054. Triads and organized crime (6 credits)
  - SOCI0056. Criminal justice: policy and practice (6 credits)
  - SOCI0060. Fraud, corruption and computer crime (6 credits)

- SOCI0067. Crime and the media (6 credits)  
 SOCI0069. Perspectives on crime and deviance (6 credits)  
 FOSS0005. Globalization and crime (6 credits)  
 FOSS0006. Drug control in comparative perspective (6 credits)  
 Special topic in sociology (6 credits) (The topic covered in this course should be related to crime and criminal justice.)

(A maximum of 12 credits of courses to be chosen from the following list, but some law courses are available to BJ, BSocSc and BSW students only):

- ECON0405. The economics of law (6 credits)  
 SOWK0028. Selected topics in social work practice (6 credits)  
 SOWK0030. Law and social administration (6 credits)  
 SOWK0033. Working with youth at risk and juvenile offenders (6 credits)  
 SOWK0034. Youth crime and juvenile justice issues (6 credits)  
 LLAW2003. Criminal law I (6 credits)  
 LLAW2004. Criminal law II (6 credits)  
 LLAW3001. Introduction to legal theory (6 credits)  
 LLAW3022. Human rights in Hong Kong (6 credits)  
 LLAW3047. Hong Kong Basic Law (6 credits)  
 LLAW3057. International criminal law (6 credits)  
 LLAW3062. Human rights in China (6 credits)  
 LLAW3090. Legal aspects of white collar crime (6 credits)  
 LLAW3101. Cybercrime (6 credits)
- 

*Candidates who minor in programmes of Family and Child Studies, Human Resources Management and International Business:*

- (a) are required to take not less than four 6-credit courses in the courses listed under the programme;
- (b) are required to take courses from at least two departments; and
- (c) shall not take more than two courses from any single department.

#### **4. Family and Child Studies (Department of Social Work and Social Administration)**

The programme aims to develop students' understanding of the development of children and young people from a psycho-social perspective. One emphasis is placed on how cultural factors, especially of the indigenous Chinese culture, influence their growth socially, cognitively and psychologically. With reference to these understandings, another focus of the programme is to teach students methods to work with children and young people with different problems and backgrounds. It is expected that after taking the programme, students will be equipped to work with children and young people in different settings more effectively.

- PSYC0009. Life-span development psychology (6 credits)  
 PSYC0035. Introduction to educational psychology (6 credits)  
 SOCI0021. Marriage and the family (6 credits)  
 SOCI0053. Youth and youth culture (6 credits)  
 SOWK0002. Working with children and families (6 credits)  
 SOWK0007. Working with families (6 credits)  
 SOWK0033. Working with youth at risk and juvenile offenders (6 credits)  
 SOWK0065. Understanding and working with young people (6 credits)  
 SOWK0075. Violence in intimate relationships (6 credits)  
 SOWK0089. Family and society - a policy perspective (6 credits)

## 5. Human Resources Management (Department of Psychology)

Since the early 1980s, Hong Kong has witnessed a shift from manufacturing to a service industry in its economic structure. There is also a rapid pace of automatization and computerization in all sectors of our economy. These two major changes have resulted in the pressing needs for retraining, revised job design, better organization communication, better management of human resources, and engineering psychology. A recent survey reveals that there are 12 jobs available to every university student trained in the area of human resources management. This figure speaks to the huge demand for human resources professionals. This minor programme is designed to serve the above needs of the society.

- ECON0103. Economics of human resources (6 credits)
  - POLI0025. Managerial skills in public organizations (6 credits)
  - POLI0037. Managing people in public organizations (6 credits)
  - POLI0065. Public organization and management (6 credits)
  - PSYC0002. Psychological testing and measurement (6 credits)
  - PSYC0005. Introduction to counseling and therapeutic psychology (6 credits)
  - PSYC0020. Fundamentals of social psychology (6 credits)
  - PSYC0032. Engineering psychology (6 credits)
  - PSYC0053. Advanced research in industrial/organizational psychology (6 credits)
  - PSYC0063. Industrial/organization psychology (6 credits)
  - SOWK0058. Managing people in human services (6 credits)
  - SOWK0068. Social skills training for human service personnel (6 credits)
- 

## 6. International Business (School of Economics and Finance)

For business, the future is global. For business executives, a solid understanding of international business is of utmost importance in this increasingly global business environment. The complexity of a business transaction between two countries, for example, between Hong Kong and China, or between China and the United States, arises from the differences in accounting, banking, culture, currency, finance, governmental regulations, information systems, insurance, law, management, marketing, political systems, taxation, and transportation. It is impossible for one to understand contemporary events and market trends without a sound background in international business. It is essential, therefore, that our students possess an understanding of the operation of global financial systems and business. The field of International Business is designed to meet the needs of students who look forward to specialized careers in corporate finance, financial counseling, investment management, or banking. Topics relevant to local and China economy are incorporated throughout all the courses.

As a field of study, International Business is broader in focus than international trade. It draws upon contributions from the traditional business disciplines of finance, banking, management, management information systems, and marketing. It also draws from anthropology, culture, economics, geography, history, languages, law, politics, psychology, and sociology. Although it is offered as a standalone concentration, it is highly recommended as a secondary concentration to any other students outside the Faculty of Social Sciences.

- ECON0301. Theory of international trade (6 credits)
- ECON0302. International finance (6 credits)
- FINA0103. International banking (6 credits)
- FINA0105. International financial management (6 credits)
- POLI0017. Government and business (6 credits)
- POLI0058. Managing the global economy (6 credits)
- SOCI0014. Globalization, work and industry
- SOCI0066. The Asian economic miracles and beyond (6 credits)
- STAT2306 (old course STAT0106). Business logistics (6 credits)
- STAT2314 (old course STAT0403). Business forecasting (6 credits)

## **7. Public and Social Administration**

The programme is jointly co-ordinated by the Department of Politics and Public Administration and the Department of Social Work and Social Administration and provides for a structured and coherent course of study in the related fields of public and social administration. It seeks to provide the community with a pool of graduates with specialized knowledge in public administration and social administration to cope with the growing challenges of public sector work and developments in social welfare services.

### *Department of Politics and Public Administration (12 credits):*

- POLI 0024. Issues in public administration (6 credits)
- POLI 0025. Managerial skills in public organizations (6 credits)
- POLI 0027. Public policy-making: theories and application (6 credits)
- POLI 0034. Public administration in China (6 credits)
- POLI 0035. Public administration in Hong Kong (6 credits)
- POLI 0037. Managing people in public organizations (6 credits)
- POLI 0038. Public policy and democracy (6 credits)
- POLI 0039. Public policy analysis (6 credits)
- POLI 0040. Public sector management (6 credits)
- POLI 0060. Public financial management (6 credits)
- POLI 0063. Performance and accountability in the public sector (6 credits)
- POLI 0065. Public organization and management (6 credits)
- POLI 0066. Public administration and the public (6 credits)
- POLI 0069. Public policy, politics and social change (6 credits)

### *Department of Social Work and Social Administration (12 credits):*

- SOWK0012. Social welfare in China (6 credits)
- SOWK0014. Health administration (6 credits)
- SOWK0023. Social policy issues in Hong Kong (6 credits)
- SOWK0030. Law and social administration (6 credits)
- SOWK0034. Youth crime and juvenile justice issues (6 credits)
- SOWK0050. Government and politics of social services in Hong Kong (6 credits)
- SOWK0051. Information and communication technology in human services (6 credits)
- SOWK0053. Evaluation of social services (6 credits)
- SOWK0055. Management in human service organizations (6 credits)
- SOWK0084. Theoretical foundations in social policy and planning (6 credits)
- SOWK0085. Social service research I methodology (6 credits)
- SOWK0086. Social service research II analysis and utilization (6 credits)

## **SECOND MAJORS AND MINORS OFFERED BY THE FACULTY OF ARTS**

### *Second Majors*

#### **School of Chinese**

The mission of the School of Chinese is to promote the understanding of Chinese language, literature and history; to further the ability of the students in the use of the Chinese language; to enhance the students' competence in translation between Chinese and English; and to advance the study of the development of the Chinese culture and strengthen its place in the modern world.

The degree courses in the School of Chinese are normally taught in Chinese. Course design is based on the assumption that the students have attained facility in the use of the Chinese language before entering the University, and that they have also acquired sufficient mastery of the English language to enable them to use freely references and relevant works published in English. Provision may be made from time to time for elective courses on various aspects of the Chinese culture.

The School offers four majors and four minors in the second and third years. The four majors are as follows:

- (i) **Chinese Language and Literature:** Group A.
- (ii) **Chinese History and Culture:** Group B.
- (iii) **Translation:** Group C (please refer to Group C for other requirements).
- (iv) **Chinese Studies:** Groups A and B.

Students are required to take not less than a total of 48 credits of second and third year courses in the specified group(s), and to meet other specified requirements, if any. For the Chinese History and Culture major, students may take one or more of the following: HIST2003, HIST2004 and HIST2018 to fulfil the credit requirements.

Students who intend to major in Chinese Language and Literature or in Translation are required to take the following first year courses as prerequisites unless the Head of School approves otherwise:

- (i) **Chinese Language and Literature majors:** CHIN1101. A survey of the Chinese language and a total of not less than 6 credits of other first year courses in Group A.
- (ii) **Translation majors:** CHIN1311. Introduction to translation and CHIN1312. Language studies for translation I.

There are no first-year prerequisites for the majors in Chinese History and Culture and Chinese Studies.

The four minors are as follows:

- (i) **Chinese Language and Literature:** Group A.
- (ii) **Chinese History and Culture:** Group B.
- (iii) **Translation:** limited to List 2 of Group C.
- (iv) **Chinese Studies:** Groups A and B.

Students are required to take not less than 24 credits of second and third year courses in the specified group(s).

There are no first-year prerequisites for the minors.

Not all the courses listed below will be offered every year. Students should refer to the School undergraduate handbook, published yearly and usually in the summer, for the courses on offer in the next academic year.

All Chinese courses available to BSocSc students are listed as below:

#### **GROUP A: CHINESE LANGUAGE AND LITERATURE**

Junior level courses (First year courses)

- |           |   |
|-----------|---|
| CHIN1101. | A survey of the Chinese language (6 credits)                                  |
| CHIN1102. | An introduction to standard works in classical Chinese literature (6 credits) |
| CHIN1103. | An introduction to standard works in modern Chinese literature (6 credits)    |
| CHIN1105. | History of Chinese literature: a general survey (3 credits)                   |
| CHIN1106. | Poetry and the couplet: the writing and appreciation (3 credits)              |
| CHIN1108. | Contrastive phonology of Putonghua and Cantonese (3 credits)                  |
| CHIN1109. | An Introduction to Chinese women's literature (3 Credits)                     |
| CHIN1110. | Creative writing I (6 credits)  |
| CHIN1111. | Creative writing II (6 credits)   |

## Senior level courses (Second and Third year courses)

- CHIN2121. Prose up to the nineteenth century (6 credits)  
 CHIN2122. Prose: selected writers (6 credits)  
 CHIN2123. Shi poetry up to the nineteenth century (6 credits)  
 CHIN2124. Shi poetry: selected writers (6 credits)  
 CHIN2125. Ci poetry up to the nineteenth century (6 credits)  
 CHIN2126. Ci poetry: selected writers (6 credits)  
 CHIN2127. Classical Chinese fiction (6 credits)  
 CHIN2128. Xiqu of the Yuan and Ming periods (6 credits)  
 CHIN2129. Modern Chinese literature (1917-1949) I (6 credits)  
 CHIN2130. Modern Chinese literature (1917-1949) II (6 credits)  
 CHIN2131. Contemporary Chinese literature (since 1949) I (6 credits)  
 CHIN2132. Contemporary Chinese literature (since 1949) II (6 credits)  
 CHIN2133. Contemporary Chinese literature (since 1949) III (6 credits)  
 CHIN2134. Prescribed texts for detailed study I (6 credits)  
 CHIN2135. Prescribed texts for detailed study II (6 credits)  
 CHIN2136. Classical Chinese literary criticism (6 credits)  
 CHIN2138. Chinese etymology (6 credits)  
 CHIN2139. Chinese Phonology (6 credits)  
 CHIN2140. Modern Chinese language I (6 credits)  
 CHIN2143. Modern Chinese language II (6 credits)  
 CHIN2144. Functional Chinese (6 credits)

**GROUP B: CHINESE HISTORY AND CULTURE**

## Junior level courses (First year courses)

- CHIN1201. Topical studies of Chinese history (6 credits)  
 CHIN1202. An introduction to the study of Chinese history (6 credits)  
 CHIN1203. Chinese history of the twentieth century (3 credits)  
 CHIN1204. Chinese culture in the twentieth century (3 credits)  
 CHIN1205. Chinese history: a general survey (3 credits)  
 CHIN1206. An introduction to Chinese thought (3 credits)  
 CHIN1207. Traditional Chinese culture (3 credits)  
 CHIN1208. Ruling strategies and governance culture in Chinese history: a general survey (3 credits)  
 CHIN1209. An introduction to Chinese religions (3 credits)

## Senior level courses (Second and Third year courses)

- CHIN2221. History of the Qin and Han Periods (6 credits)  
 CHIN2222. History of the Wei, Jin and the Northern-and-Southern Periods (6 credits)  
 CHIN2223. History of the Sui and Tang Periods (6 credits)  
 CHIN2224. History of the Song and Yuan Periods (6 credits)  
 CHIN2225. History of the Ming Period (6 credits)  
 CHIN2226. History of the Qing Period (6 credits)  
 CHIN2231. Religious Daoism and popular religions in China (3 credits)  
 CHIN2233. History of the Chinese legal system (6 credits)  
 CHIN2234. History of Chinese political institutions (6 credits)  
 CHIN2235. Sources and methodology (6 credits)  
 CHIN2241. History of Chinese civilization (6 credits)  
 CHIN2243. History of Chinese science and civilization (6 credits)  
 CHIN2244. History of Guanxue and Sixue (3 credits)  
 CHIN2245. History of Chinese examination system (3 credits)  
 CHIN2246. Historical writings: texts and styles (6 credits)  
 CHIN2247. Local histories (fangzhi) and genealogical records (zupu) (6 credits)  
 CHIN2251. Chinese philosophy I: Confucianism (6 credits)

CHIN2252.	Chinese philosophy II: Daoism (6 credits)
CHIN2253.	Chinese philosophy III: Buddhism (6 credits)
CHIN2254.	Christianity and Chinese culture (3 credits)
CHIN2255.	Chinese intellectual history (Part I) (6 credits)
CHIN2256.	Chinese intellectual history (Part II) (6 credits)
CHIN2257.	The development of Confucianism in late imperial China (3 credits)
CHIN2258.	The mentality of literati in Ming-Qing transition (3 credits)
CHIN2259.	Historical writing and historiography in traditional China (6 credits)
CHIN2261.	Buddha and Bodhisattva worship in Chinese Buddhism (3 credits)
CHIN2262.	Daoist ritual and religious culture in China (3 credits)
CHIN2263.	Workshop in Chinese biographical studies (6 credits)
CHIN2264.	Chinese eroticism (3 credits)
CHIN2265.	Childhood in late imperial China (3 credits)
CHIN2266.	History education and Chinese culture (3 credits)
CHIN2267.	Jews in China (3 credits)

### **GROUP C: TRANSLATION**

Junior level courses (First year courses)

CHIN1311.	Introduction to translation (6 credits)
CHIN1312.	Language studies for translation I (6 credits)

Senior level courses (Second and Third year courses)

All courses listed below, if not otherwise specified, may be taken in either the second or the third year. Students opting for the Major are however required to take all the courses in List 1 in the years indicated, unless the Head of School approves otherwise,

Second Year: CHIN2311, 2312, 2313, 2314, 2315, 2316 (totalling 21 credits)

Third Year: CHIN2317, 2318, 2319, 2320 (totalling 18 credits),

and their remaining courses from List 2 in either the Second or the Third Year to make up at least 48 credits in two years.

Some of the courses require CHIN2335 or CHIN2336 as a prerequisite. In exceptional cases, these requirements may be waived by the Head of the School.

#### List 1

Courses in List 1 are offered to Translation majors only. Non-majors who wish to take any of the courses should first apply for permission from the Head of School.

CHIN2311.	Translation criticism I (English-Chinese) (3 credits)
CHIN2312.	Translation criticism II (Chinese-English) (3 credits)
CHIN2313.	Language studies for translation II (6 credits)
CHIN2314.	Translation in practice I (English-Chinese) (3 credits)
CHIN2315.	Translation in practice II (Chinese-English) (3 credits)
CHIN2316.	Translation theory (3 credits)
CHIN2317.	Translation criticism III (English-Chinese) (3 credits)
CHIN2318.	Translation criticism IV (Chinese-English) (3 credits)
CHIN2319.	Language studies for translation III: comparative stylistics (6 credits)
CHIN2320.	Long translation (6 credits)

#### List 2

CHIN2331.	Choice of words in translation (6 credits)
CHIN2332.	Translation in Hong Kong society (3 credits)
CHIN2333.	Culture and translation (6 credits)
CHIN2334.	Power of speech in written translation (3 credits)
CHIN2335.	Introduction to interpretation (3 credits)
CHIN2336.	Interpretation workshop I (3 credits)

- CHIN2337. Journalistic translation (3 credits)
- CHIN2338. Translation of promotional material (3 credits)
- CHIN2339. Translation for administration and business (3 credits)
- CHIN2340. Film translation workshop (6 credits)
- CHIN2341. Translating writings on art (3 credits)
- CHIN2342. Interpretation workshop II (6 credits)

## **GROUP D: DISSERTATION**

### **Third Year Course**

#### **CHIN3401. Dissertation (12 credits)**

A dissertation will be written on a subject approved by the supervisor and the School. This course is only open to students majoring in the School of Chinese.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

## **ASSESSMENT**

Coursework assessment will be based on performance in tutorials and seminars, and on the strength of essays and such other exercises as can be assessed continually.

Each course will be examined by a written paper of not more than 2-hour duration except those courses which are assessed by 100% coursework.

---

## **School of Humanities**

### **Comparative Literature**

If we do not study other cultures, we cannot even understand our own. In the department, we study literature from a broad range of international and interdisciplinary perspectives, and in relation to other forms of cultural expression.

The department offers courses in literary, theoretical and cultural studies using cross-cultural materials and interdisciplinary approaches. Some of the main areas covered include Visual Cultures and Film Studies, Literature and Theory, Feminism and Gender Studies, Postcolonial/Hong Kong/China Studies, and New Media and Global Studies.

Our courses study a wide range of texts in terms of both form and content. Students learn to read culture in the broadest sense – analyzing literary texts, films, fashion magazines, cyber texts, advertisements, comics, popular music, and other relevant cultural productions and practices.

Such an approach provides a focus for significant interdisciplinary study in the Humanities and a training in thinking about the nature of the relationship between culture and society. The direction of interest is indicated in the description of each course.

Texts are studied in English, though texts in Chinese are used in Cross-Cultural studies and Hong Kong/Chinese cultural studies.

Courses are open to students who have fulfilled the University's entrance requirements, though priority will usually be given to students with a Grade C or above in the Use of English examination, or who otherwise show special aptitude.

In order to major in Comparative Literature first year students must normally take at least two of the 6-credit first year courses offered by the department. In the second and third years, students must select not less than eight 6-credit courses or equivalent from among those offered by the department. There are no particular requirements in terms of core courses and course combinations.

A minor shall consist of 24 credit units of second and third-year courses from the Comparative Literature syllabus. No prerequisites are required in the First Year.

All courses offered in the department will be examined by 100% continuous assessment. Course organisers will provide details of assessment at the beginning of their course. **All specific course descriptions will be provided in the departmental handbook and can be downloaded from our website: [www.hku.hk/complit/courses.htm](http://www.hku.hk/complit/courses.htm).**

---

All Comparative Literature course are listed as below:

*Junior Level (first year courses)*

- CLIT1001. Introduction to comparative literary and cultural studies I: Film studies (6 credits)
- CLIT1002. Introduction to comparative literary and cultural studies II: Gender studies (6 credits)
- CLIT1003. Introduction to comparative literary and cultural studies III: Digital culture (6 credits)
- CLIT1004. Introduction to comparative literary and cultural studies IV: Colonial and postcolonial culture – Hong Kong and beyond (6 credits)
- CLIT1005. Introduction to comparative literary and cultural studies V: Disney and global capital (6 credits)
- CLIT1006. Introduction to comparative literary and cultural studies VI: Cultural studies (6 credits)
- CLIT1008. Ways of Reading: film, literature, and culture (6 credits)
- CLIT1009. Questioning difference: gender, postcolonialism and culture (6 credits)

*Senior Level (second and third year courses)*

- CLIT2001. Comparative studies in narratives (6 credits)
- CLIT2003. Modern European drama (6 credits)
- CLIT2005. Literary and cultural theory (6 credits)
- CLIT2007. Film culture I (6 credits)
- CLIT2008. Film culture II (6 credits)
- CLIT2014. Feminist cultural studies (6 credits)
- CLIT2016. The body in culture (6 credits)
- CLIT2017. A new introduction to modernism (6 credits)
- CLIT2018. Critiques of modernity (6 credits)
- CLIT2021. Reading the nineteenth-century: revolution, romanticism and realism (6 credits)
- CLIT2022. Reading the nineteenth-century: reaction and modernity (6 credits)
- CLIT2023. Heterologies: the discourse of the other (6 credits)
- CLIT2024. Reading comedy: Dante and Boccaccio (6 credits)
- CLIT2025. Visual cultures (6 credits)
- CLIT2026. Digital culture and new media technologies I (6 credits)
- CLIT2027. Digital culture and new media technologies II (6 credits)
- CLIT2028. The city as cultural text (6 credits)
- CLIT2031. Fashion theory (6 credits)
- CLIT2035. Writing madness (6 credits)
- CLIT2037. Gender and sexuality in contemporary Chinese literature and film (6 credits)
- CLIT2042. Reading confessing (6 credits)
- CLIT2045. Colonialism/postcolonialism (6 credits)
- CLIT2050. Globalization and culture (6 credits)
- CLIT2051. Jane Austen and popular culture (6 credits)
- CLIT2052. Chinese urban culture (6 credits)
- CLIT2057. Carnival versus tragedy: Reading renaissance culture (6 credits)

CLIT2058.	Histories of sexuality (6 credits)
CLIT2060.	Fiction and film in contemporary Chinese societies (6 credits)
CLIT2061.	Narratives of the past in contemporary culture (6 credits)
CLIT2064.	Hong Kong culture: Popular culture (6 credits)
CLIT2065.	Hong Kong culture: Representations of identity in literature and film (6 credits)
CLIT2066.	Postmodernism (6 credits)
CLIT2067.	Re-placing Shakespeare (6 credits)
CLIT2069.	The making of modern masculinities (6 credits)
CLIT2070.	Heidegger and everydayness (6 credits)
CLIT2072.	Deconstruction (6 credits)
CLIT2073.	Deleuze on cinema (6 credits)
CLIT2074.	Film and ideology in post-Mao China (6 credits)
CLIT2075.	Reading modern poetry (6 credits)
CLIT2076.	Fashioning Femininities (6 credits)
CLIT2078.	Childhood, feminine roles and cultural myths (6 credits)
CLIT2079.	Traumatic events (6 credits)
CLIT2080.	Walter Benjamin as writer and cultural critic (6 credits)
CLIT2081.	Becoming post-human: animal bodies and virtual bodies (6 credits)
CLIT2083.	Film art, language and culture (6 credits)
CLIT2084.	“New” cinemas across national boundaries (6 credits)
CLIT2085.	Hong Kong: Community and cultural policy in the global context (6 credits)
CLIT2086.	Asia on global screens (6 credits)
CLIT2087.	Modern Chinese culture and society: Rebellions and revolutions (6 credits)
CLIT2088.	Critical approaches to film studies (6 credits)
CLIT2089.	Culture and ‘queer’ theory (6 credits)
HIST2082.	Europe and its others (6 credits)
HIST2083.	Gender, sexuality and empire (6 credits)
HIST2084.	Sexing the spirit: The history of the modern feminist challenge to Christianity (6 credits)
HIST2085.	The History of Modern Sexual Identity and Discourse (6 credits)

---

### Fine Arts

The Department of Fine Arts teaches the history and theory of art. European, American, Chinese, Japanese and Indian artistic traditions are all examined in depth, and the broader international context of art making is also considered. An introduction to museum studies is also offered. Students may major in Fine Arts, or take a disciplinary minor, but will also discover many fruitful combinations between Fine Arts courses and those of other Arts and Social Science disciplines.

Students wishing to major in Fine Arts must normally pass **FINE1001** or **FINE1004** or **FINE1006** or **FINE1008** in their first year and must choose not less than 48 credits from among those courses offered by the department in the second and third years. Of these 48 credits, at least 6 credits must be in Western art and at least 6 credits must be in Asian art.

There are no other specific requirements as to core courses or course combinations for majors, but prospective students are asked to note that individual second and third year courses in the Fine Arts Department may require **FINE1001** or **FINE1004** or **FINE1006** or **FINE1008** as a prerequisite. Other prerequisites for second- and third-year courses are listed in the course descriptions. In exceptional cases, these requirements may be waived. All major and other course selections are subject to the approval of the Head of the School of Humanities on the recommendation of the Undergraduate Coordinator of the department.

A disciplinary minor in Fine Arts shall consist of 24 credit units of Second and Third Year courses from the Fine Arts syllabus taken in the third to sixth semesters. As a pre-requisite, students must normally

pass **FINE1001** or **FINE1004** or **FINE1006** or **FINE1008** in their first year. Students are asked to note that certain Second and Third year courses have specific prerequisites. Otherwise, all Second and Third year Fine Arts courses may be taken to fulfill the minor requirement.

The form of assessment (i.e. percentage weighting of coursework and/or examination) for each course is specified in the course descriptions. Coursework assessment will be based on the student's performance in tutorials, seminars, written work and other practical work as specified by the course instructor.

All Fine Arts courses available to BSocSc Students are listed as below:

*Junior level courses (First Year Courses)*

- FINE1001. Introduction to western art history (6 credits)
- FINE1004. Introduction to Chinese art history (6 credits)
- FINE1006. Art and Society (6 credits)
- FINE1007. Introduction to photography theory and practice (6 credits)
- FINE1008. Introduction to Asian art history (6 credits)

*Senior level courses (Second and Third years courses)*

The following courses are open to both second and third year students. Prerequisites, if required, are stated in the course descriptions. If staffing arrangements permit, the following courses will be offered:

- FINE2012. Italian Renaissance art (6 credits)
- FINE2013. Northern Renaissance art (6 credits)
- FINE2020. American art (6 credits)
- FINE2025. The art of the Baroque (6 credits)
- FINE2026. The age of revolution: Art in Europe, 1750-1840 (6 credits)
- FINE2027. The formation of modernity: Art in Europe, 1840-1890 (6 credits)
- FINE2028. Vision in crisis (6 credits)
- FINE2029. Modernity and its discontents (6 credits)
- FINE2030. Towards the global (6 credits)
- FINE2031. The rise of modern architecture in Western culture (6 credits)
- FINE2032. Art and the portrayal of women (6 credits)
- FINE2033. Cross-cultural interaction in the 19<sup>th</sup> century (6 credits)
- FINE2034. Hong Kong art workshop (6 credits)
- FINE2035. Photography and the nineteenth century (6 credits)
- FINE2036. Photography in the twentieth century (6 credits)
- FINE2042. Chinese Material Culture I: Neolithic to Tang (6 credits)
- FINE2043. Chinese Material Culture II: Song to Qing (6 credits)
- FINE2044. The whys of where: visual geographies of China and Japan (6 credits)
- FINE2045. Colour and Culture (6 credits)
- FINE2046. Art and the Human Body (6 credits)
- FINE2047. Arts of India (6 credits)
- FINE2048. Arts of Japan (6 credits)
- FINE2050. Interpretations of Chinese landscape painting (6 credits)
- FINE2051. Art, politics, and society in modern China (6 credits)
- FINE2052. Architecture of South and Southeast Asia (6 credits)
- FINE2053. Beauties and the Beasts: Song and Yuan Painting (6 credits)
- FINE2054. Visual Culture of Modern Japan (6 credits)
- FINE2055. Crossing Cultures: China and the Outside World (6 credits)
- FINE2056. Museum studies workshop (6 credits)

*Third year courses*

The following courses are open only to third year students and will be taught in a seminar format except for FINE3007.

- FINE3004. Museum studies internship (6 credits)  
 FINE3006. Art history methodology workshop (6 credits)  
 FINE3007. Independent research project (6 credits)  
 FINE3008. Perspectives in Asian art (6 credits)  
 FINE3009. Perspectives in Western art (6 credits)
- 

## History

First-year students may enroll in any of the following courses. Students intending to declare a major in History in the Second Year must enroll in **HIST1013. Doing history** and one other six-credit course. **HIST1003. Information technology for historical studies** satisfies the University's IT requirement and is highly recommended for students intending to declare a major in History.

- HIST1003 Information technology for historical studies (3 credits)  
 [must be taken concurrently with another History course]
- HIST1008 The world at war (6 credits)
- HIST1010 An introduction to European history and civilization (6 credits)
- HIST1012 From imperial to colonial: Nineteenth century Hong Kong (6 credits)
- HIST1013 Doing history (3 credits)  
 [must be taken concurrently with another 6-credit History course]
- HIST1014 The early modern world (6 credits)
- HIST1015 Foundations of modern China: Dimensions of Qing history (6 credits)
- HIST1016 The modern world (6 credits)

The History Department offers both a major and a minor in History, but some of its courses are also included as part of the various interdisciplinary major and minor programmes. The major in History is open to all students in the Faculty of Arts and the Faculty of Social Sciences. Students enrolling in a History major are also able to declare a double major in one of the major programmes offered by the Faculty of Social Sciences.

To declare a major in History a student must first complete **HIST1013. Doing history** (3 credits) and one other six-credit first-year History course listed above. A major in History consists of 48 credit units selected from among the courses listed in the following Syllabus. Of these, at least 12 credit units must be in Asian History (China, Hong Kong or Japan) and at least 12 credits must be in Western History (America and Europe). This requirement may be met by taking either Survey or Seminar courses. The courses taken must also include at least 12 credit units of Seminar Courses, but students are encouraged to take more than the minimum number of Seminar Courses. Students declaring a major in History normally take 24 credit units in the second year and 24 credit units in the third year, but there is a great deal of flexibility in balancing credits between the two years of study.

History majors are encouraged to enroll in **HIST2065. Workshop in historical research** and **HIST3015. Theory and practice of history**, but these are not requirements for the major. Any student who is interested in pursuing postgraduate studies in History is also encouraged to take these two courses and either **HIST3017. Dissertation elective** (12 credits) or **HIST3023. History research project** (6 credits).

---

All History courses are available to BSocSc students are as listed as below:

### *Junior Level*

- \*HIST1003. Information technology for historical studies (3 credits)
- HIST1008. The world at war (6 credits)
- HIST1010. An introduction to European history and civilisation (6 credits)
- HIST1012. From imperial to colonial: nineteenth century Hong Kong (6 credits)

- HIST1013. Doing history (3 credits)  
 HIST1014. The early modern world (6 credits)  
 HIST1015. Foundations of modern China: dimensions of Qing history (6 credits)  
 HIST1016. The modern world (6 credits)  
 HIST1017. Modern Hong Kong (6 credits)  
 (\* this course is regarded as an elective course and not counted towards Major/Minor requirement)

*Senior Level*

I. Survey courses

- CHIN2225. History of the Ming period (6 credits)  
 CHIN2226. History of the Qing period (6 credits)  
 HIST2003. Twentieth-century China, part I: from revolution to revolution, 1900-1949 (6 credits)  
 HIST2004. Twentieth-century China, part II: from revolution to modernization, 1949 to present (6 credits)  
 HIST2005. History of Hong Kong, part I (6 credits)  
 HIST2006. History of Hong Kong, part II (6 credits)  
 HIST2008. Meiji Japan, 1868-1912 (6 credits)  
 HIST2009. Modern Japan since 1912 (6 credits)  
 HIST2011. Nineteenth-century Europe, part I: 1780-1850 (6 credits)  
 HIST2012. Nineteenth century Europe, part II: 1850-1914 (6 credits)  
 HIST2013. Twentieth-century Europe, part I: the European Civil War, 1914-1945 (6 credits)  
 HIST2014. Twentieth-century Europe, part II: Europe divided and undivided, 1945-1991 (6 credits)  
 HIST2015. The United States before 1900 (6 credits)  
 HIST2016. The United States in the twentieth century (6 credits)  
 HIST2018. The foreign relations of China since 1949 (6 credits)  
 HIST2021. Nineteenth century Russia, 1800-1905 (6 credits)  
 HIST2024. A century of business in Hong Kong, 1842-1949 (6 credits)  
 HIST2025. British Hong Kong and China 1895-1945 (6 credits)  
 HIST2026. Interpreting Japanese history through movies (6 credits)  
 HIST2027. The foundations of international trade and finance in the modern world (6 credits)  
 HIST2031. History through film (6 credits)  
 HIST2034. An introduction to the history of education in Hong Kong (6 credits)  
 HIST2035. The Bauhinia and the Lotus: Culture and history of the two SARS (6 credits)  
 HIST2037. Germany between the two World Wars: the rise and fall of Adolf Hitler (6 credits)  
 HIST2038. Germany, 1871-1990: From unification to reunification (6 credits)  
 HIST2039. War and peace: Conflicts and conflict resolutions since 1945 (6 credits)  
 HIST2040. Life in Tokugawa Japan, 1603-1868 (6 credits)  
 HIST2042. The history of sport (6 credits)  
 HIST2046. The modern European city: Urban living and open spaces (6 credits)  
 HIST2062. From empire to EU: culture, politics and society in twentieth century Britain (6 credits)  
 HIST2063. Europe and modernity: cultures and identities, 1890-1940 (6 credits)  
 HIST2064. Sweat and abacus: Overseas Chinese in Southeast Asia (6 credits)  
 HIST2065. Workshop in historical research (6 credits)  
 HIST2066. Narcotic culture: A history of drugs (6 credits)  
 HIST2067. Sex, gender and modernity in China (6 credits)  
 HIST2068. The intellectual history of twentieth-century China (6 credits)  
 HIST2069. The history of American popular culture (6 credits)  
 HIST2070. Stories of self: History through autobiography (6 credits)  
 HIST2071. Joseph Stalin: His life, policies and historical assessment (6 credits)  
 HIST2072. A history of modern European warfare (6 credits)  
 HIST2073. Prussia in the age of absolutism and reform, 1648-1815 (6 credits)  
 HIST2076. Germany and the Cold War (6 credits)  
 HIST2077. Eating History: food culture from the 19<sup>th</sup> century to the present (6 credits)

- HIST2078. Renaissance Europe 1453-1648 (6 credits)  
 HIST2079. Early Modern Europe 1648-1789 (6 credits)  
 HIST2085. The history of modern sexual identity and discourse (6 credits)  
 HIST2086. Bismarck: The Iron Chancellor (6 credits)  
 HIST2087. The Vietnam Wars (6 credits)  
 HIST2088. From communism to capitalism: Eastern Europe and the Soviet Union after 1980 (6 credits)  
 HIST2091. The British Empire (6 credits)  
 HIST2092. The United States and Asia (6 credits)  
 HIST2093. International history in the era of two World Wars (6 credits)

## II. Seminar courses

- CHIN2235. Sources and methodology (6 credits)  
 GEOG2060. An Introduction to archaeology (6 credits)  
 HIST2032. Case studies in women's history: Hong Kong and the U.S. (6 credits)  
 HIST2048. The history of young people in modern Europe (6 credits)  
 HIST2052. Social issues in Hong Kong history (6 credits)  
 HIST2053. The Cold War (6 credits)  
 HIST2074. Historical studies using computers (6 credits)  
 HIST2075. Directed reading (6 credits)  
 HIST2080. Classroom across the Pacific: American history and anthropology (6 credits)  
 HIST2081. Gender and history: Beauty, fashion and sex (6 credits)  
 HIST2082. Europe and its other (6 credits)  
 HIST2083. Gender, sexuality and empire (6 credits)  
 HIST2084. Sexing the spirit: The history of the modern feminist challenge to Christianity (6 credits)  
 HIST2089. History's closet: Clothing in context (6 credits)  
 HIST2090. The Great Famine (1959-61) (6 credits)  
 HIST2094. Museums and history (6 credits)  
 HIST2095. The World Wars through documents (6 credits)  
 HIST2096. The history of European business in China (6 credits)  
 HIST2097. Mao (6 credits)  
 HIST2098. A history of modern Taiwan (6 credits)  
 HIST2099. Themes in the history of the post-Cold War world (6 credits)  
 HIST2100. Eating history: Intensive seminar in food culture (3 credits)  
 HIST2101. History's closet: Intensive seminar (3 credits)

## Semester V/VI

- HIST3015. The theory and practice of history (6 credits)  
 HIST3017. Dissertation elective (12 credits)  
 HIST3022. History by numbers: quantitative methods in History (6 credits)  
 HIST3023. History research project (6 credits)  
 HIST3024. Writing Hong Kong History (6 credits)
- 

## Linguistics

In the Department of Linguistics, students can investigate a variety of different languages and through such investigations, come to a better understanding of the shared structure and broad variation of the world's languages.

The undergraduate programme in Linguistics permits students to combine in a single field a variety of Arts and Social Science subjects and to develop their analytic skills in depth. Students are encouraged to explore with members of staff the many relationships of linguistics with other fields in order to discover the programme that best suits their individual goals and interests.

The department offers the following majors and joint programmes:

- Major in Linguistics
- Major in Human Language Technology
- Programme in Linguistics and Philosophy

### **Major in Linguistics**

Students majoring in Linguistics must take **LING1001 Introduction to linguistics**, and **LING1003 Language, thought, and culture** in their first year.

They must also take

- LING2004. Phonetics: describing sounds** and
- LING2050. Grammatical description** normally in their second year and
- LING3003. Linguistics field trip** in their third year.

In addition, they must take a minimum of 30 credits in their second and third year of study from the following list of courses:

- LING2001. Computational linguistics (6 credits)
- LING2002. Conversation analysis (6 credits)
- LING2003. Semantics: meaning and grammar (6 credits)
- LING2009. Languages of the world (6 credits)
- LING2010. Language and dialect (6 credits)
- LING2011. Language and literacy in the information age (6 credits)
- LING2012. Experimental phonetics (6 credits)
- LING2013. Language typology: the study of linguistic diversity (6 credits)
- LING2018. Lexical-functional grammar (6 credits)
- LING2022. Pragmatics (6 credits)
- LING2023. Discourse analysis (6 credits)
- LING2024. Lexicology and lexicography (6 credits)
- LING2025. Corpus linguistics (6 credits)
- LING2027. Phonology: An introduction to the study of sound systems (6 credits)
- LING2030. Morphological theory (6 credits)
- LING2031. Phonological theory (6 credits)
- LING2032. Syntactic theory (6 credits)
- LING2033. Contrastive grammar of English and Chinese (6 credits)
- LING2034. Psycholinguistics (6 credits)
- LING2036. Child language (6 credits)
- LING2037. Bilingualism (6 credits)
- LING2038. Historical linguistics (6 credits)
- LING2039. Language variation and change (6 credits)
- LING2040. Languages in contact (6 credits)
- LING2041. Language and information technology (6 credits)
- LING2042. Educational linguistics (6 credits)
- LING2043. Language and animal communication (6 credits)
- LING2044. Language and culture (6 credits)
- LING2045. Writing systems (6 credits)
- LING2046. British linguistics (6 credits)
- LING2047. Optimality theory (6 credits)
- LING2048. Language and cognition (6 credits)
- LING2051. French syntax and universal grammar (6 credits)
- LING2052. Swahili structure and universal grammar (6 credits)
- LING2053. Language and the brain (6 credits)
- LING2054. Language and social interaction (6 credits)
- LING2055. Reading development and reading disorders (6 credits)
- LING3002. Extended essay (6 credits)

## **Major in Human Language Technology (HLT)**

### **INTRODUCTION: WHAT IS HUMAN LANGUAGE TECHNOLOGY (HLT)?**

Human Language Technology is a relatively new discipline that investigates two main issues. On the one hand it explores the theoretical and practical issues surrounding the ability to get technology, especially modern information communications technology (ICT), to interact with humans using natural language capabilities. On the other hand, it is a discipline that investigates how technologies, especially ICTs, can serve as useful adjuncts to humans in language understanding, including analysis, processing, storage and retrieval. This investigation could lead to practical applications, including the design of online learning environments for language learning and multilingual retrieval for automatic translation.

---

### **AIMS AND OBJECTIVES:**

The following are some of the objectives of the proposed programme: (1) to give students a perspective of how technology relates to human language processing; (2) to understand how information communications technology has been applied to different aspects of Linguistics and human language processing and to what effect; (3) to critically evaluate the role of technology in human language processing; and (4) to examine the range of opportunities available to different professionals regarding the application of technology in human language processing.

---

### **COMPONENTS OF THE PROGRAMME:**

Students majoring in HLT must take **LING1001. Introduction to linguistics**, and preferably also **LING1002. Language.com:Language in the contemporary world** or **LING1003 Language, thought, and culture** in their first year. They must also take **LING2004. Phonetics: describing sounds** and **LING2050. Grammatical description** normally in their second year and **LING3003. Linguistics field trip** in their third year. In addition, they must take a minimum of 30 credits in their second and third year of study from the following list of courses:

---

#### **Second Year:**

LING2011. Language and literacy in the information age (6 credits)

LING2004. Phonetics: describing sounds (6 credits) and/or  
LING2012. Experimental phonetics (6 credits)

LING2027. Phonology: An introduction to the study of sound systems (6 credits) and/or  
LING2031. Phonological theory (6 credits)

LING2030. Morphological theory (6 credits) and/or  
LING2050. Grammatical description (6 credits)

LING2032. Syntactic theory (6 credits) and/or  
LING2050. Grammatical description (6 credits)

LING2003. Semantics: meaning and grammar (6 credits)

**Third Year:**

- LING2001. Computational linguistics (6 credits)
- LING2018. Lexical-functional grammar (6 credits)
- LING2024. Lexicology and lexicography (6 credits)
- LING2041. Language and information technology (6 credits)
- LING3003. Linguistics field trip (6 credits)

Students may seek permission to replace an HLT course with another relevant course in the department should there be staffing or timetabling problems. Students in the third year can take second year courses, if necessary.

---

**Programme in Linguistics and Philosophy**

The Department of Philosophy in collaboration with the Department of Linguistics offers a major in Linguistics and Philosophy:

**First year:**

- (a) Linguistics: LING1001. Introduction to linguistics
- (b) Philosophy: PHIL1001. Knowledge of the world: an introduction to philosophy  
or  
PHIL1002. The human mind: an introduction to philosophy  
or  
PHIL1003. Ethics and society: an introduction to philosophy  
or  
PHIL1004. Chinese and Western thought: an introduction to philosophy

**Second and third years (eight courses):**

- (c) Linguistics:

- LING2003. Semantics: meaning and grammar
- LING2027. Phonology: An introduction to the study of sound systems
- LING2032. Syntactic theory
- LING2050. Grammatical description

- (d) Philosophy:

- PHIL2610. Philosophy of language

and any three of:

- PHIL2060. Wittgenstein
- PHIL2075. The semantics/pragmatics distinction
- PHIL2110. Knowledge
- PHIL2120. Topics in analytic philosophy
- PHIL2220. The mind
- PHIL2230. Philosophy and cognitive science
- PHIL2250. Logic, computation, and neural networks
- PHIL2310. Theories of morality
- PHIL2350. Philosophy of law
- PHIL2380. Philosophy and literature
- PHIL2420. Chinese philosophy: metaphysics
- PHIL2460. Philosophical Chinese

- PHIL2510. Logic
- PHIL2511. Paradoxes
- PHIL2520. Philosophy of logic

The remaining eight courses in a student's second/third year programme may be selected from those offered by any department, as permitted by the regulations.

It should be noted that not all courses are offered in both departments every year. Choices are subject to approval by the Head of the School of Humanities on the recommendation of the Undergraduate Coordinators of the departments.

---

## **Music**

### **First Year Requirements**

First year music specialists and intending majors must take:

- MUSI1004 Introduction to musics of the world (6 credits)
- MUSI1014 Aural skills (3 credits)\*
- MUSI1019 Fundamentals of tonal music I (3 credits)
- MUSI1020 Fundamentals of tonal music II (6 credits)
- MUSI1021 Western music history 1 (6 credits)

All Level 100 courses except MUSI1018 are also open to BA students who are not music specialists or intending majors. These courses may also count as inter-Faculty broadening courses, if allowed by the student's home Faculty or department. Students who do not intend to major in music may still choose to take MUSI1018 with the approval of the Head of the School of Humanities on the recommendation of the Undergraduate Coordinator of the department.

Second and third year music majors and specialists must take:

- MUSI2004 University gamelan 1 (3 credits)\*
- MUSI2052 Advanced tonal chromaticism and analysis (6 credits)
- MUSI2057 Western music history 2 (6 credits)
- MUSI2058 Western music history 3 (6 credits)

and at least THREE of the following five courses. All five courses will be available over a two-year period. Please check with the Music Department for details:

- MUSI2006 Analysis of orally transmitted musics (6 credits)
- MUSI2010 Music of China (6 credits)
- MUSI2015 Popular music: from Cantopop to techno (6 credits)
- MUSI2029 Chinese music history (6 credits)
- MUSI2055 Chinese opera (6 credits)

The following courses are elective. All music majors and specialists must take at least nine elective credits from Level 200 or 300 courses. Students are free to choose from any category.

---

\* Year course.

### Thinking in Music

- MUSI2009 Topics in Asian music history (6 credits)
- MUSI2016 Music of contemporary Hong Kong (6 credits)
- MUSI2031 American music (6 credits)
- MUSI2033 Music and culture in Bali: an overseas fieldtrip (6 credits)
- MUSI2035 Love, sex, and death in music of the ancient and modern world (6 credits)
- MUSI2037 Directed study 1 (6 credits)\*
- MUSI2044 Film music (6 credits)
- MUSI2048 Music, language, and meaning (6 credits)
- MUSI2054 The piano (6 credits)
- MUSI2056 Defining the arts scene in Hong Kong (6 credits)
- MUSI3016 Directed study 2 (6 credits)\*

### Technology and Composition

- MUSI2013 Computer and electronic music (6 credits)
- MUSI2026 Fundamentals of music composition (6 credits)
- MUSI2027 Composing for the concert world (6 credits)
- MUSI2030 Composing for the commercial world (6 credits)
- MUSI2036 Audio digital signal processing (6 credits)
- MUSI2042 Contrapuntal techniques (6 credits)
- MUSI2043 Orchestration (6 credits)
- MUSI2053 Post-Tonal techniques and advanced analysis (6 credits)

### Practical Applications

- MUSI2028 The business of music (6 credits)
- MUSI2032 Orchestral studies and techniques 2 (3 credits)\*
- MUSI2041 University choir 2 (3 credits)\*
- MUSI2046 Performance workshop 2 (3 credits)\*
- MUSI2047 Advanced music performance 2 (6 credits)\*
- MUSI2051 Rhythms of life: music and culture in West Africa (3 credits)
- MUSI3008 University gamelan 2 (3 credits)\*
- MUSI3012 Orchestral studies and techniques 3 (3 credits)\*
- MUSI3017 University choir 3 (3 credits)\*
- MUSI3018 Performance workshop 3 (3 credits)\*
- MUSI3019 Advanced music performance 3 (6 credits)\*

### Courses for Non-Music Majors

Second and third year BA students who are not music majors or specialists may choose from the following courses:

- MUSI2004 University gamelan 1 (3 credits)\*
- MUSI2010 Music of China (6 credits)
- MUSI2013 Computer and electronic music (6 credits)
- MUSI2015 Popular music: from Cantopop to techno (6 credits)
- MUSI2016 Music of contemporary Hong Kong (6 credits)
- MUSI2018 Understanding music (3 credits)
- MUSI2019 Music in society (3 credits)
- MUSI2028 The business of music (6 credits)
- MUSI2029 Chinese music history (6 credits)
- MUSI2031 American music (6 credits)
- MUSI2032 Orchestral studies and techniques 2 (3 credits)\*
- MUSI2033 Music and culture in Bali: an overseas fieldtrip (6 credits)

---

\* Year course.

- MUSI2035 Love, sex, and death in music of the ancient and modern world (6 credits)  
 MUSI2036 Audio digital signal processing (6 credits)  
 MUSI2041 University choir 2 (3 credits)\*  
 MUSI2042 Contrapuntal techniques (6 credits)  
 MUSI2043 Orchestration (6 credits)  
 MUSI2044 Film music (6 credits)  
 MUSI2046 Performance workshop 2 (3 credits)\*  
 MUSI2048 Music, language, and meaning (6 credits)  
 MUSI2049 Music and power (3 credits)  
 MUSI2050 Representation of the supernatural in music (3 credits)  
 MUSI2051 Rhythms of life: music and culture in West Africa (3 credits)  
 MUSI2052 Advanced tonal chromaticism and analysis (6 credits)  
 MUSI2053 Post-Tonal techniques and advanced analysis (6 credits)  
 MUSI2054 The piano (6 credits)  
 MUSI2055 Chinese opera (6 credits)  
 MUSI2056 Defining the arts scene in Hong Kong (6 credits)  
 MUSI3008 University gamelan 2 (3 credits)\*  
 MUSI3012 Orchestral studies and techniques 3 (3 credits)\*  
 MUSI3017 University choir 3 (3 credits)\*  
 MUSI3018 Performance workshop 3 (3 credits)\*

All of the above may also count as inter-Faculty broadening courses, if allowed by the student's home Faculty or department. Non-music majors may also choose any course or combination of courses not listed above with the approval of the Head of the School of Humanities on the recommendation of the Undergraduate Coordinator of the department.

---

## **Philosophy**

Students wishing to take the courses listed below are strongly recommended to have taken at least one first-year course. Apart from PHIL3810 Senior Seminar and PHIL 3910 Senior Thesis, these courses are all second or third year courses. Some of these courses are also available to students of other faculties as 'broadening courses'. Some of these courses have no required prerequisites, as noted below. For the other courses, if it is not explicitly stated that no prerequisite is required, then either a 6-credit first-year course or the instructor's permission is required.

Most of these courses consist of 24 hours including lectures and tutorials in one semester. Details of tutorial and other arrangements are published each year in the department's booklet, Choices in Philosophy.

All these courses but two are listed under four groups:

- Knowledge and reality
- Mind and language
- Moral and political philosophy
- History of philosophy.

Of the second and third year courses listed, twelve to sixteen will normally be offered each year. This means that not every course will be available in any two-year period. Some courses, however, are likely to be offered every year (because of our commitments to curricula outside the B.A., and for other reasons), and some we prefer to give at least once every two years to make sure that every student has an opportunity to take them. Details of this are indicated below.

Students who major in philosophy must take at least eight (6-credit second and third year) courses in philosophy, and are recommended to take at least one course from each of these categories. In addition,

---

\* Year course.

at least one 6-credit first-year course is strongly recommended. Note that many of the second and third year courses have a first-year prerequisite. Third year majors are recommended to take the **Senior seminar** in their final year, especially if they are considering further study in philosophy, provided that their second year grades reach a good level.

Students who minor in Philosophy must complete 24 credits of second and third-year courses. In addition, at least one 6-credit first-year course is strongly recommended. Note that many of the second and third year courses have a first-year prerequisite.

All Philosophy courses are available to BSocSc students are listed as below:

*Junior Level*

- PHIL1001. Knowledge of the world: an introduction to philosophy (6 credits)
- PHIL1002. The human mind: an introduction to philosophy (6 credits)
- PHIL1003. Ethics and society: an introduction to philosophy (6 credits)
- PHIL1004. Chinese and Western thought: an introduction to philosophy (6 credits)
- PHIL1005. Critical thinking and logic (6 credits)
- PHIL1006. Elementary logic (3 credits)
- PHIL1008. Elementary logic II (3 credits)

*Senior Level*

Group I: Knowledge and Reality

- PHIL2110. Knowledge (6 credits)
- PHIL2120. Topics in analytic philosophy (6 credits)
- PHIL2130. Philosophy of the sciences (6 credits)
- PHIL2140. Philosophy of social science (6 credits)
- PHIL2150. Philosophy and biology (6 credits)
- PHIL2210. Metaphysics (6 credits)
- PHIL2420. Chinese philosophy: metaphysics (6 credits)

Group II: Mind and Language

- PHIL2070. Pragmatism (6 credits)
- PHIL2075. The semantics/pragmatics distinction (6 credits)
- PHIL2220. The mind (6 credits)
- PHIL2230. Philosophy and cognitive science (6 credits)
- PHIL2250. Logic, computation, and neural networks (6 credits)
- PHIL2460. Philosophical Chinese (6 credits)
- PHIL2510. Logic (6 credits)
- PHIL2511. Paradoxes (6 credits)
- PHIL2520. Philosophy of logic (6 credits)
- PHIL2610. Philosophy of language (6 credits)

Group III: Moral and Political Philosophy

- PHIL2080. Marxist philosophy (6 credits)
- PHIL2310. Theories of morality (6 credits)
- PHIL2320. Happiness (6 credits)
- PHIL2340. Moral problems (6 credits)
- PHIL2345. Social contract theories (6 credits)
- PHIL2350. Philosophy of law (6 credits)
- PHIL2355. Theories of justice (6 credits)
- PHIL2360. Political philosophy (6 credits)
- PHIL2362. Liberal democracy (6 credits)
- PHIL2365. Philosophical problems of modernity (6 credits)
- PHIL2369. Philosophy of nature (6 credits)
- PHIL2375. Philosophy of art (6 credits)

- PHIL2380. Philosophy and literature (6 credits)
- PHIL2390. Philosophy of religion (6 credits)
- PHIL2430. Chinese philosophy: ethics (6 credits)
- PHIL2480. Confucianism and the modern world (6 credits)

#### Group IV: History of Philosophy

- PHIL2001. The beginnings of philosophy (6 credits)
- PHIL2002. Early modern philosophy (6 credits)
- PHIL2010. Plato (6 credits)
- PHIL2011. Aristotle (6 credits)
- PHIL2020. Descartes (6 credits)
- PHIL2025. Hume (6 credits)
- PHIL2027. Rousseau (6 credits)
- PHIL2030. Kant's critical philosophy (6 credits)
- PHIL2035. Philosophy of the Enlightenment (6 credits)
- PHIL2040. Nietzsche (6 credits)
- PHIL2050. Philosophy of history (6 credits)
- PHIL2060. Wittgenstein (6 credits)
- PHIL2077. Habermas (6 credits)
- PHIL2085. Contemporary European philosophy (6 credits)
- PHIL2090. Foucault (6 credits)
- PHIL2440. Confucius (6 credits)
- PHIL2442. Mencius (6 credits)
- PHIL2450. Zhuangzi (6 credits)
- PHIL2451. Philosophers' views of China in early-modern Europe (6 credits)

#### Courses of unspecified category

- PHIL3810. Senior seminar (6 credits)
  - PHIL3910. Senior thesis (12 credits)
- 

### School of Modern Languages and Cultures

#### American Studies

The Programme in American Studies provides an interdisciplinary approach to the study of American culture and civilization. Students must gain admittance to the programme by taking TWO or more of the first-year courses to qualify for a second major. These courses include: AMER1009 “Consuming culture: decoding American symbols”, AMER1011 “Born in the USA: U.S. youth cultures”, AMER1015 “Wall Street: Issues in American business” AMER1017 “Movieland: America on Hollywood’s big screen, and AMER1018 “From crime fiction to social document: Introduction to 20<sup>th</sup>-century American literature”. Enrolments may be limited in these courses.

In order to ensure reasonable coverage and interdisciplinary understanding, students who intend to pursue a major in American Studies must, in their second and third years, take a minimum of eight 6-credit courses (or the equivalent) from the list below. Only in exceptional cases may a waiver be granted for a core course.

#### *4 American Studies Core Courses (24 credits)*

- AMER2030. Foundations of American studies, Part I (6-credit course in second year)
- AMER2031. Foundations of American studies, Part II (6-credit course in second year)
- AMER3004. Senior seminar in American studies: Part I (6-credit course in third year)
- AMER3005. Senior seminar in American studies: Part II (6-credit course in third year)

*4 Courses from the following list of American Studies and departmental offering (24 credits)*

### **American Studies**

- AMER2002. The road in American culture (6 credits)
- AMER2014. A dream in the heart: varieties of Asian American culture (6 credits)
- AMER2015. The American city (6 credits)
- AMER2018. Show me the money: doing business with Americans (6 credits)
- AMER2021. On the road again: Field trip in American Studies (6 credits)
- AMER2022. What's on TV? Television and American culture (6 credits)
- AMER2029. Current perspectives on the U.S. (6 credits)
- AMER2033. Asia on America's screen (6 credits)
- AMER2035. Addicted to war? The US at home and abroad (6 credits)
- AMER2037. Institutions in American life: home, education, work and play (6 credits)
- AMER3006. Dissertation (12 credits)

### **English**

- ENGL2040. Asian American literature (6 credits)
- ENGL2055. American gothic: Haunted homes (6 credits)
- ENGL2059. American drama and American film (6 credits)
- ENGL2089. Making Americans: Literature as ritual and renewal (6 credits)
- ENGL2090. The moving production of America: reading recent films (6 credits)
- ENGL2091. Comedy and Asian American drama (6 credits)
- ENGL2104. Language in the USA (6 credits)
- ENGL2105. Contemporary North American novelists (6 credits)

### **Fine Arts**

- FINE2020. American art (6 credits)
- FINE2031. The rise of modern architecture in western culture (6 credits)

### **Geography**

- GEOG2085. North America (6 credits)

### **History**

- HIST2015. The United States before 1900 (6 credits)
- HIST2016. The United States in the twentieth century (6 credits)
- HIST2031. History through film (6 credits)
- HIST2032. Case studies in women's history: Hong Kong and the U.S. (6 credits)
- HIST2053. The Cold War (6 credits)
- HIST2069. The history of American popular culture (6 credits)
- HIST2080. Classroom across the Pacific: American History and Anthropology (6 credits)
- HIST2100. Eating history: intensive seminar in food culture
- HIST2101. History's closet: intensive seminar

### **Music**

- MUSI2015. Popular music: from Cantopop to techno (6 credits)
- MUSI2031. American music (6 credits)

### **Politics and Public Administration**

- POLI0021. Understanding global issues (6 credits)
- POLI0044. American democracy (6 credits)
- POLI0047. United States foreign policy (6 credits)

**Not all of the above electives may be offered in a given year.**

### **Japanese Studies**

To qualify for a major in Japanese Studies, students with no prior qualifications in the Japanese language must take a minimum of 24 credits of first year courses from List A below, and students with prior qualifications in the Japanese language may take a minimum of 18 credits of first year courses from List B below. One optional course (**JAPN1009 Introduction to Japanese linguistics**) is offered to students who wish to study the language more.

#### List A

- JAPN1011 Introduction to Japanese studies (6 credits)
- JAPN1088 Japanese language I (Part 1) (9 credits)
- JAPN1099 Japanese language I (Part 2) (9 credits)

#### List B

- JAPN1011 Introduction to Japanese studies (6 credits)
- JAPN1188 Japanese language II (Part 1) (6 credits)
- JAPN1199 Japanese language II (Part 2) (6 credits)

First year students with prior qualifications in the Japanese language should contact the School of Modern Languages and Cultures general office for the qualification examination date and time in early September [Same conditions also apply to **JAPN1066 Japanese language I(a) (Part 1)** and **JAPN1077 Japanese language I(a) (Part 2)**, **JAPN2066 Japanese language II(a) (Part 1)** and **JAPN2077 Japanese language II(a) (Part 2)**, and **JAPN3066 Japanese language III(a) (Part 1)** and **JAPN3077 Japanese language III(a) (Part 2)**].

1. The **Japanese Studies Programme** consists of 3 components:

- (i) *Japanese language* training in the Japanese Studies programme;
- (ii) *Japanese language-intensive* courses in various disciplines taught in the Japanese Studies programme;
- (iii) Japan-related *interdisciplinary content* courses in various disciplines which are open to any student who satisfies the prerequisites.

2. Major in Japanese Studies Programme

2A. A major in Japanese Studies consists of 54 credits in the **Japanese Studies programme** to be taken in the Second and Third years.

To major in Japanese Studies, students who have no prior qualifications in the Japanese language and completed **JAPN1088 Japanese language I (Part 1) (9 credits)**, **JAPN1099 Japanese language I (Part 2) (9 credits)** and **JAPN1011 Introduction to Japanese studies (6 credits)** in the first year must normally take the following language courses in their second year:

- JAPN2088 Japanese language II (Part 1) (6 credits)**  
**JAPN2099 Japanese language II (Part 2) (6 credits)**

Students who do not participate in the one-year exchange to Japan must normally take the following courses in their third year.

- JAPN2188 Japanese language III (Part 1) (6 credits)**  
**JAPN2199 Japanese language III (Part 2) (6 credits)**

Students who participate in the one-year exchange to Japan must normally take the following courses in their third year:

- JAPN3188 Japanese Language IV (Part 1) (6 credits)**  
**JAPN3199 Japanese Language IV (Part 2) (6 credits)**

Students who have prior qualifications in the Japanese language and completed **JAPN1188 Japanese language II (Part 1) (6 credits)**, **JAPN1199 Japanese language II (Part 2) (6 credits)** and **JAPN1011 Introduction to Japanese studies (6 credits)** in the first year must normally take the following language courses in their second and/or third year to major in Japanese Studies.

**JAPN2188 Japanese language III (Part 1) (6 credits)**  
**JAPN2199 Japanese language III (Part 2) (6 credits)**

However, students who have course instructors' permission to do so can take JAPN3188 and JAPN3199 instead of/in addition to JAPN2188 Japanese language III (Part 1) and JAPN2199 Japanese language III (Part 2) as a part of the requirement to major in Japanese Studies.

In addition, all the students must complete at least one *Japanese language-intensive* course (6 credits) (to be selected from List D at the end of this section) in each of the second and third years, and must also complete three *interdisciplinary content* courses (6 credits each) (to be selected from List E at the end of this section) during the two-year period that comprises their second and third years (completing at least one in each of their second and third years).

## 2B. Special Honours (SH) in Japanese Studies

### Goals and objectives of the SH

The SH provides students with opportunities to achieve upper-advanced levels of Japanese language proficiency, along with superior critical and analytical understanding in the study of Japan. By the end of the programme, students will be able to:

- Use Japanese with high levels of accuracy and fluency in most formal and informal contexts on practical, social, and abstract topics.
- Effectively express themselves, support opinions, and hypothesize in oral/ written communication.
- Read a variety of literary texts and expository prose with complete comprehension.
- Follow the essentials of complex discourse in academic/ professional settings, in lectures, speeches and reports.
- Attain a superior understanding of a range of fields within Japanese Studies, sufficient to form a sound basis for postgraduate research in either an English-medium or a Japanese-medium programme.
- Display the ability to articulate a sophisticated level of critical and analytical argument about Japan in Japanese, sufficient to form a sound basis for postgraduate research in a Japanese-medium programme.

### Eligibility

- Students who took part in one-year exchange programmes in Japan.
- Students who are not in the above group, but obtained grade A in **JAPN2099 Japanese language II (Part 2)** or **JAPN1199 Japanese language II (Part 2)** or **JAPN2199 Japanese language III (Part 2)**, and also have teachers' recommendation.

### Assessment for Special Honours Degree

Exit assessment based on course grades: an average grade of B or above in Japanese Studies major courses is required for the award of Special Honours.

Course/ credit requirements

The SH consists of 60 credit units as follows.

■ Core language courses

To obtain Special Honours in Japanese Studies, students must take either one of the following five combinations of language courses.

A:

- Year 1: JAPN1088 Japanese language I (Part 1)  
JAPN1099 Japanese language I (Part 2)
- Year 2: JAPN2088 Japanese language II (Part 1)  
JAPN2099 Japanese language II (Part 2)
- (with grade A in JAPN2099 and teacher's recommendation)
- Year 3: JAPN3188 Japanese language IV (Part 1)  
JAPN3199 Japanese language IV (Part 2)

B:

- Year 1: JAPN1088 Japanese language I (Part 1)  
JAPN1099 Japanese language I (Part 2)
- Year 2: JAPN2088 Japanese language II (Part 1)  
JAPN2099 Japanese language II (Part 2)
- (one year exchange)
- Year 3: JAPN3188 Japanese language IV (Part 1)  
JAPN3199 Japanese language IV (Part 2)

C:

- Year 1: JAPN1188 Japanese language II (Part 1)  
JAPN1199 Japanese language II (Part 2)
- Year 2: JAPN2188 Japanese language III (Part 1)  
JAPN2199 Japanese language III (Part 2)
- (with grade A in JAPN2199 and teacher's recommendation)
- Year 3: JAPN3188 Japanese language IV (Part 1)  
JAPN3199 Japanese language IV (Part 2)

D:

- Year 1: JAPN1188 Japanese language II (Part 1)  
JAPN1199 Japanese language II (Part 2)
- (one year exchange)
- Year 2 or 3: JAPN3188 Japanese language IV (Part 1)  
JAPN3199 Japanese language IV (Part 2)

E:

- Year 1: JAPN1188 Japanese language II (Part 1)  
JAPN1199 Japanese language II (Part 2)
- Year 2: JAPN2188 Japanese language III (Part 1)  
JAPN2199 Japanese language III (Part 2)
- (one year exchange)
- Year 3: JAPN3188 Japanese language IV (Part 1)  
JAPN3199 Japanese language IV (Part 2)

■ Language-intensive courses

12 credits including at least 6 credits from the following courses.

- JAPN3005 Media Japanese (6)  
JAPN3016 Advanced business Japanese (6)

Non-SH students are not allowed to take the language intensive courses above. Exceptions can be made at the teacher's discretion in the case that non-SH students wish to take the courses.

■ Content courses

24 credits including at least 12 credits from the following courses.

- JAPN3004 Contemporary Japanese fiction (6)
- JAPN3006 Extended essay in Japanese studies (9) (The essay has to be written in Japanese)
- JAPN3008 Contemporary Japanese popular music (6)
- JAPN3009 Japanese films (6)
- JAPN3021 Communication and society (6)

Non-SH students are not allowed to take the content courses above, with the exception of JAPN3006. Exceptions can be made at the teacher's discretion in the case that non-SH students wish to take the courses.

Credit transfer

■ Core language courses

JAPN3188 (Part 1) and JAPN3199 (Part 2) are mandatory for SH students and credit transfer for these courses is not accepted.

■ Language intensive courses and content courses

Credit transfer can be considered if the student took similar courses in other institutions. The student is required to submit detailed information about the course (ex: syllabus and course description, course materials, etc.) to programme coordinators in order to have the credit transfer considered.

All Japanese Studies courses available to BSocSc students are listed as below:

*Junior Level*

- JAPN1066. Japanese language I(a) (Part 1) (3 credits)
- JAPN1077. Japanese language I(a) (Part 2) (3 credits)
- JAPN1009. Introduction to Japanese linguistics (6 credits)
- JAPN1011. Introduction to Japanese studies (6 credits)
- JAPN1088. Japanese language I (Part 1) (9 credits)
- JAPN1099. Japanese language I (Part 2) (9 credits)
- JAPN1188. Japanese language II (Part 1) (6 credits)
- JAPN1199. Japanese language II (Part 2) (6 credits)

*Senior Level*

List C. Japanese Language Courses

*Second Year*

- JAPN2088. Japanese language II (Part 1) (6 credits)
- JAPN2099. Japanese language II (Part 2) (6 credits)

*Second and Third Years*

- JAPN2066. Japanese language II(a) (Part 1) (3 credits)
- JAPN2077. Japanese language II(a) (Part 2) (3 credits)
- JAPN2188. Japanese language III (Part 1) (6 credits)
- JAPN2199. Japanese language III (Part 2) (6 credits)

*Third Year*

- JAPN3066. Japanese language III(a) (Part 1) (3 credits)
- JAPN3077. Japanese language III(a) (Part 2) (3 credits)
- JAPN3188. Japanese language IV (Part 1) (6 credits)
- JAPN3199. Japanese language IV (Part 2) (6 credits)

**List D** Language-Intensive Courses*Second Year*

- JAPN2002. Japan in Japanese (6 credits)
- JAPN2007. Modern Japanese short stories (6 credits)
- JAPN2008. Translation I (Japanese into English) (6 credits)
- JAPN2009. Translation I (Chinese/Japanese, Japanese/Chinese) (6 credits)
- JAPN2032. The changing image of Hong Kong in Japanese writings (6 credits)
- JAPN2036. Japanese text analysis (3 credits)
- JAPN2037. Interpretation I (Putonghua and Cantonese – Japanese) (6 credits)
- JAPN2038. Interpretation II (Putonghua and Cantonese – Japanese) (6 credits)

*Second and Third Years*

- JAPN2026. Japanese language III extended (6 credits)

*Third Year*

- JAPN3003. Selected readings in Japanese studies (6 credits)
- JAPN3005. Media Japanese (6 credits)
- JAPN3007. Translation II - Japanese – English (6 credits)
- JAPN3010. Translation II (Chinese/Japanese, Japanese/Chinese) (6 credits)
- JAPN3011. Japanese in popular culture (6 credits)
- JAPN3015. Business Japanese I (3 credits)
- JAPN3016. Advanced Business Japanese II (6 credits)
- JAPN3020. Advanced translation, Japanese to Chinese (6 credits)

**List E** Interdisciplinary Content Courses*Second and Third Years*

- JAPN2003. Introduction to Japanese literature (6 credits)
- JAPN2010. Japanese business: an anthropological introduction (6 credits)
- JAPN2011. Anthropology of Japan (6 credits)
- JAPN2014. China and Japan (6 credits)
- JAPN2015. Japanese enterprise groupings (6 credits)
- JAPN2016. Comparative linguistics: Cantonese and Japanese I  
Comparative phonology (6 credits)
- JAPN2018. Popular culture and artistic activity in Japan (6 credits)
- JAPN2024. Comparative linguistics: Cantonese and Japanese III  
Syntactic features and pedagogical implications (6 credits)
- JAPN2027. Comparative linguistics: Cantonese and Japanese II  
Phonological transfer and pedagogy in foreign language acquisition (6 credits)
- JAPN2029. Japanese popular music and Hong Kong society (6 credits)
- JAPN2030. Japanese business, culture and communication (6 credits)
- JAPN2031. The media and Japan (6 credits)
- JAPN2034. Education in contemporary Japanese society (6 credits)
- JAPN2035. Women in Japan and Hong Kong (6 credits)
- JAPN2039. Negotiation and conflict resolution: a cross-cultural perspective (6 credits)
- JAPN2040. Understanding Japanese business through novels (6 credits)

*Third Year*

- JAPN3004. Contemporary Japanese fiction (6 credits)
- JAPN3006. Extended essay in Japanese studies (9 credits)
- JAPN3008. Contemporary Japanese popular music (6 credits)
- JAPN3009. Japanese film (6 credits)
- JAPN3014. Project in Japanese business (6 credits)
- JAPN3021. Communication and society (6)

The following *interdisciplinary content* courses are available in other disciplines (although not all may be offered each year).

### *Second and Third Years*

#### Fine Arts

- FINE2044. The whys of where: visual geographies of China and Japan
- FINE2048. Arts of Japan
- FINE2054. Visual culture of modern Japan

#### *History*

- HIST2008. Meiji Japan, 1868-1912 (6 credits)
- HIST2009. Modern Japan since 1912 (6 credits)
- HIST2040. Life in Tokugawa Japan, 1603-1868 (6 credits)

#### *Department of Sociology*

- SOCI0017. Japanese economic institutions (6 credits)
  - SOCI0018. Japanese society (6 credits)
- 

### **Language Centre**

#### *Major in French*

Students enrolled in French courses in their first year may choose to major in French in their second and third years. The objective of the programme is to bring participants to a high level of proficiency in the language as well as to provide them with a sound knowledge of French society and culture.

In order to declare a major in French, applicants must initially complete two foundation courses in their first year (LANG1001 *French I.1* and LANG1002 *French I.2*, first and second semesters, 12 credits in all) and achieve grade C- minimum in these courses. In addition, applicants will normally be required to take part in an intensive course offered by the Centre at the end of the second semester (usually in June).

In their second and third years of study, students pursuing a major in French must take a total of 48 credits of French courses which should normally be distributed as follows: in the Second Year, 24 credits from courses at Level 200, of which 12 credits must be from the core language course, i.e., *French language II.1*; in the Third Year, 24 credits from courses at Level 300, of which 12 credits must be from the core language course, i.e., *French language III.1*. (See list of French courses). In addition, students will normally be required to take part in an intensive course offered by the Centre at the end of the fourth semester (usually in June). Alternatively, students will be strongly encouraged to participate in a linguistic stay in France during the summer.

#### List of French Courses

##### *Junior level courses (First year courses)*

- LANG1001. French I.1 (6 credits/first semester)
- LANG1002. French I.2 (6 credits/second semester)
- LANG1035. France today: an overview (3 credits)

##### *Senior level courses (Second year courses)*

- LANG2001. French language – II.1 (12 credits/whole year)
- LANG2035. Introduction to French/Chinese translation – Part I (3 credits/first semester)
- LANG2036. Introduction to French/English translation – Part I (3 credits/first semester)
- LANG2037. Introduction to French/Chinese translation – Part II (3 credits/second semester)

- LANG2038. Introduction to French/English translation – Part II (3 credits/second semester)  
 LANG2043. French language and culture I (3 credits/first semester)  
 LANG2044. French language and culture II (3 credits/second semester)  
 LANG2045. French speech and sounds – Part I (3 credits/first semester)  
 LANG2046. French speech and sounds – Part II (3 credits/second semester)  
 LANG2047. French reading course (3 credits)  
 LANG2048. French songs and lyrics (3 credits)

*Senior level course (Third year courses)*

- LANG3001. French language – III.1 (12 credits/whole year)  
 LANG3003. French/English translation: practical skills (3 credits/first semester)  
 LANG3004. French/Chinese translation: practical skills (3 credits/second semester)  
 LANG3005. French and business (3 credits/second semester)  
 LANG3022. French eastern narratives (3 credits)  
 LANG3033. French media and advertising (3 credits)  
 LANG3034. French essay writing (3 credits)  
 LANG3036. French society and cinema (3 credits)  
 LANG3038. French in France (3 credits)  
 LANG3053. French literature: the 19th century (3 credits/first semester)  
 LANG3054. French literature: the 20th century (3 credits/second semester)
- 

***Major in German***

The Major in German provides students with a comprehensive knowledge of both spoken and written German. In addition to the acquisition of these linguistic skills students will be introduced to a wide range of aspects of contemporary German society and culture through the study of numerous multimedia materials and documents in the target language that will be included in courses in area studies, translation and literature in the Second and Third Year.

All German Major Students are encouraged to attend an intensive summer language course (German in Germany) of 4 weeks duration at a university in Germany during the summer between their 2nd and 3rd year and successful completion of such a course at the appropriate level will count as 3 credits towards their major requirements. Longer stays of one to two semesters are also encouraged and can be arranged through the German Section.

**Programme Requirements**

***First Year***

In the First Year students will have to successfully complete a total of 12 credits in German language by enrolling in the courses LANG1003 German I.1 (6 credits/1st Semester) and LANG1004 German I.2 (6 credits/2nd Semester).

***Second Year***

In the Second Year students will have to complete a total of 24 credits of courses taught in German:

- a) LANG2004 German II.1 (12 credits/whole year)
- b) a total of 12 credits from the following courses:  
 LANG2039 Translation exercise I (3 credits/1st semester)  
 LANG2041 Representations of contemporary German society in the media (3 credits/1st semester)  
 LANG2040 Translation exercise II (3 credits/2nd semester)  
 LANG2042 Producing German texts I (3 credits/2nd semester)  
 LANG2056 Understanding Germany and the Germans (3 credits/2nd semester).  
 LANG2061 German for business I (3 credits/ 2<sup>nd</sup> semester)

During the summer between Second and Third Years students are strongly encouraged to attend one of the summer language courses offered by universities in Germany. Successful completion of such a four weeks' course at late beginners/early intermediate level (based on the terminology used in Germany) can be counted as 3 credits towards the requirements for the German Major.

### *Third Year*

In the final year students will have to complete a total of 24 credits from the following courses taught in German:

- a) LANG3007 German III.1 (12 credits/whole year)
  - b) 3 credits from
    - either LANG3048 Fairytale princes, nature lovers and revolutionaries – The German Romantics (3 credits/2nd semester)
    - or LANG3010 German projects (3 credits/2nd semester)
  - c) a total of 9 credits from the following courses:
    - LANG3008 Reading course (3 credits/1st semester)
    - LANG3039 German in Germany (3 credits/taught during the summer between Year II & III)
    - LANG3045 Translation exercise III (3 credits/1st semester)
    - LANG3046 Translation exercise IV (3 credits/2nd semester).
    - LANG3047 Producing German texts II (3 credits/1st semester)
    - LANG3056 German for business II (3 credits/1<sup>st</sup> semester)
- 

### *Major in Spanish*

Students enrolled in Spanish courses in their first year may choose to major in Spanish in their second and third years. The objective of the programme is to bring participants to a high level of proficiency in the language as well as to provide them with a sound knowledge of Spanish society and culture.

In order to declare a major in Spanish, applicants must initially complete two foundation courses in their first year (LANG1038 Spanish language I.1 and LANG1039 Spanish language I.2, first and second semesters, + 12 credits in all).

In their second and third years of study, students pursuing a major in Spanish must take a total of 48 credits of Spanish courses which should normally be distributed as follows: in the Second Year, 24 credits from courses at level 200, of which 12 must be from the core language course, i.e. Spanish II; in the Third Year, 24 credits from courses at level 300, of which 12 must be from the core language course, i.e. Spanish III (see the list of courses below). In addition, students will be strongly encouraged to participate in a linguistic stay in Spain (or a Hispanic country) during the summer.

### List of Spanish Courses

#### *Junior level courses (First Year courses)*

- LANG1038. Spanish language I.1 (6 credits/first semester)
- LANG1039. Spanish language I.2 (+ 6 credits/second semester)

#### *Senior level course*

##### *(Second year courses)*

- LANG2011. Spanish II (12 credits/whole year)
- LANG2055. Spanish for business I (3 credits/second semester)
- LANG2057. Spanish language and culture I (3 credits/first semester)
- LANG2058. Spanish language and culture II (3 credits/second semester)
- LANG2059. Spanish phonetics I (3 credits/first semester)
- LANG2060. Spanish phonetics II (3 credits/second semester)

*(Second/Third years-courses)*

- LANG0003. Introduction to Spanish culture (3 credits/first semester)  
 LANG0005. Hispanic film and literature (3 credits/second semester)

*(Third Year courses)*

- LANG3013. Spanish III (12 credits/whole year)  
 LANG3042. Spanish in Spain (3 credits)  
 LANG3055. Spanish for business II (3 credits/first semester)

*Minors***American Studies**

Students must gain admittance to the programme by taking ONE or more of the first-year courses to qualify for a minor. These courses include:

- AMER1009. Consuming culture: decoding American symbols (6 credits)  
 AMER1011. Born in the USA': U.S. youth cultures (6 credits)  
 AMER1015. Wall Street: Issues in American business (6 credits)  
 AMER1017. Movieland: America on Hollywood's big screen (6 credits)  
 AMER1018. From crime fiction to social document: Introduction to 20<sup>th</sup>-century American literature (6 credits)

Students may take American Studies as a minor by completing 24 credits of second-and third-year courses. Of these courses, students must take:

2 American Studies Core Courses (12 credits) drawn from the following:

- AMER2030. Foundations of American studies, Part I (6-credit course in second year)  
 AMER2031. Foundations of American studies, Part II (6-credit course in second year)  
 AMER3004. Senior seminar in American studies: Part I (6-credit course in third year)  
 AMER3005. Senior seminar in American studies: Part II (6-credit course in third year)

The remaining 2 courses (12 credits) may be drawn from the following:

- AMER2002. The road in American culture (6 credits)  
 AMER2014. A dream in the heart: varieties of Asian American culture (6 credits)  
 AMER2015. The American city (6 credits)  
 AMER2018. Show me the money: doing business with Americans (6 credits)  
 AMER2021. On the road again: Field trip in American Studies (6 credits)  
 AMER2022. What's on TV? Television and American culture (6 credits)  
 AMER2029. Current perspectives on the U.S. (6 credits)  
 AMER2033. Asia on America's screen (6 credits)  
 AMER2035. Addicted to war? The US at home and abroad (6 credits)  
 AMER2037. Institutions in American life: home, education, work and play (6 credits)  
 AMER3006. Dissertation (12 credits)

**European Studies**

A minor shall consist of 24 credit units of second and third year courses from the European Studies syllabus. As a pre-requisite, candidates must pass EUST1010. Foundations of European Studies (6 credits). The following two courses out of three are compulsory for the minor: EUST2010. European identity (6 credits) or EUST2011. Modern European lifestyle: fashion, food, music and sex (6 credits) and EUST3010. European political and economic institutions and processes (6 credits). The following courses are optional but highly recommended: EUST2012. Problem of contemporary European politics

and society (6 credits), EUST2030. The modern imagination in Europe (6 credits), EUST3011. European values in conflict (6 credits) and EUST3012. The EU as a global actor and Sino-European relations (6 credits). Courses taken to fulfill the requirements of the candidate's major may not be counted towards a minor in European Studies. Candidates please refer to the following course list for other optional courses:

*Junior Level*

EUST1010. Foundations of European Studies (6 credits)

*Senior Level*

Core courses for the European Studies minor:

- EUST2010. European identity (6 credits) OR
- EUST2011. Modern European lifestyle: fashion, food, music and sex in Europe (6 credits)
- EUST3010. European political and economic institutions and processes (6 credits)

Optional courses for the European Studies minor:

*Comparative Literature*

- CLIT2003. Modern European drama: drama and the modern subject (6 credits)
- CLIT2021. Reading the nineteenth-century: revolution, romanticism and realism (6 credits)
- CLIT2022. Reading the nineteenth-century: reaction and modernity (6 credits)
- CLIT2024. Reading comedy: Dante and Boccaccio (6 credits)
- CLIT2045. Colonialism/postcolonialism (6 credits)
- CLIT2057. Carnival versus tragedy: Reading renaissance culture (6 credits)
- CLIT2058. Histories of sexuality: Freud and Foucault (6 credits)
- CLIT2067. Re-placing Shakespeare (6 credits)

*Economics and Finance*

- ECON0107. History of economic thought (6 credits)
- ECON0301. Theory of international trade (6 credits)
- ECON0302. International finance (6 credits)
- ECON0406. The economy and the state (6 credits)

*English*

- ENGL2003. The history of English (6 credits)
- ENGL2010. English novel I (6 credits)
- ENGL2011. English novel II (6 credits)
- ENGL2012. Contemporary literary theory (6 credits)
- ENGL2045. Travel writing (6 credits)
- ENGL2076. Romanticism (6 credits)
- ENGL2078. The novel today (6 credits)
- ENGL2079. Shakespeare (6 credits)
- ENGL2080. Women, feminism and writing II (6 credits)
- ENGL2082. Modern literary criticism (6 credits)
- ENGL2084. Modernism and short fiction (6 credits)

*European Studies*

- EUST2012. Problems of contemporary European politics and society (6 credits)
- EUST2030. The modern imagination in Europe (6 credits)
- EUST3003. European Studies dissertation (12 credits)
- EUST3004. European Studies research project (6 credits)
- EUST3011. European values in conflict (6 credits)
- EUST3012. The EU as a global actor and Sino-European relations (6 credits)

*Fine Arts*

- FINE2012. Italian renaissance art (6 credits)

FINE2013.	Northern renaissance art (6 credits)
FINE2025.	The art of the baroque (6 credits)
FINE2026.	The age of revolution: Art in Europe, 1750-1840 (6 credits)
FINE2027.	The formation of modernity: Art in Europe, 1840-1890 (6 credits)
FINE2028.	Vision in crisis (6 credits)
FINE2029.	Modernity and its discontents (6 credits)
FINE2032.	Art and the portrayal of women (6 credits)
FINE2033.	Cross-cultural interaction in the 19th century (6 credits)
FINE2035.	Photography and the nineteenth century (6 credits)
FINE2036.	Photography in the twentieth century (6 credits)

*Geography*

GEOG2080.	Regional geography of Europe (6 credits)
-----------	--

*History*

HIST2011.	Nineteenth-century Europe, Part I: 1780-1850 (6 credits)
HIST2012.	Nineteenth-century Europe, Part II: 1850-1914 (6 credits)
HIST2013.	Twentieth-century Europe, Part I: the European Civil War, 1914-1945 (6 credits)
HIST2014.	Twentieth-century Europe, Part II: Europe divided and undivided, 1945-1991 (6 credits)
HIST2021.	Nineteenth-century Russia, 1800-1905 (6 credits)
HIST2027.	The foundation of international trade and finance in the modern world (6 credits)
HIST2037.	Germany between the two World Wars: the rise and fall of Adolf Hitler (6 credits)
HIST2038.	Germany, 1871-1990: From unification to reunification (6 credits)
HIST2042.	The history of sport (6 credits)
HIST2046.	The modern European city: Urban living and open spaces (6 credits)
HIST2048.	The history of young people in modern Europe (6 credits)
HIST2062.	From empire to EU: Culture, politics and society in twentieth century Britain (6 credits)
HIST2063.	Europe and modernity: cultures and identities, 1890-1940 (6 credits)
HIST2071.	Joseph Stalin: His life, policies and historical assessment (6 credits)
HIST2072.	A history of modern European warfare (6 credits)
HIST2073.	Prussia in the age of absolutism and reform, 1648-1815 (6 credits)
HIST2076.	Germany and the Cold War (6 credits)
HIST2078.	Renaissance Europe 1453-1648 (6 credits)
HIST2079.	Early modern Europe 1648-1739 (6 credits)
HIST2088.	From communism to capitalism: Eastern Europe and the Soviet Union after 1980 (6 credits)

*Language Centre*

LANG0001.	Introduction to Italian life and culture (3 credits)
LANG0002.	Introducing Germany and the Germans (3 credits)
LANG0003.	Introduction to Spanish culture (3 credits)
LANG0005.	Hispanic film and literature (3 credits)
LANG0006.	Italian classical roots in European civilization (3 credits)
LANG0007.	From Viking to Volvo: an introduction to contemporary Sweden (3 credits)
LANG1035.	France today: an overview (3 credits)
LANG2031.	Italian reading course (3 credits)
LANG2032.	Italian and business (3 credits)
LANG2041.	Representations of contemporary German society in the media (3 credits)
LANG2043.	French language and culture I (3 credits)
LANG2044.	French language and culture II (3 credits)
LANG2047.	French reading course (3 credits)
LANG2048.	French songs and lyrics (3 credits)
LANG2050.	Profile of Italian literature I (3 credits)

LANG2051.	Profile of Italian literature (contemporary Italian literature) - II (3 credits)
LANG2055.	Spanish for business I (3 credits)
LANG2056.	Understanding Germany and the Germans (3 credits)
LANG3008.	Reading course (3 credits)
LANG2057.	Spanish language and culture I (3 credits)
LANG2058.	Spanish language and culture II (3 credits)
LANG3010.	German project (3 credits)
LANG3022.	French eastern narratives (3 credits)
LANG3033.	French media and advertising (3 credits)
LANG3036.	French society and cinema (3 credits)
LANG3048.	Fairytale princes, nature lovers and revolutionaries - the German romantics (3 credits)
LANG3053.	French Literature: the 19 <sup>th</sup> century (3 credits)
LANG3054.	French Literature: the 20 <sup>th</sup> century (3 credits)
LANG3055.	Spanish for business II (3 credits)

*Music*

MUSI2007.	Western music history 1 (6 credits)
MUSI2008.	Western music history 2 (6 credits)
MUSI2035.	Love, sex and death in music of the ancient and modern world (6 credits)
MUSI2054.	The piano (6 credits)

*Philosophy*

PHIL2002.	Early modern philosophy (6 credits)
PHIL2010.	Plato (6 credits)
PHIL2011.	Aristotle (6 credits)
PHIL2020.	Descartes (6 credits)
PHIL2025.	Hume (6 credits)
PHIL2030.	Kant's critical philosophy (6 credits)
PHIL2035.	Philosophy of the enlightenment (6 credits)
PHIL2040.	Nietzsche (6 credits)
PHIL2060.	Wittgenstein (6 credits)
PHIL2077.	Habermas (6 credits)
PHIL2080.	Marxist philosophy (6 credits)
PHIL2085.	Contemporary European philosophy (6 credits)
PHIL2090.	Foucault (6 credits)
PHIL2210.	Metaphysics (6 credits)
PHIL2320.	Happiness
PHIL2360.	Political philosophy (6 credits)
PHIL2380.	Philosophy and literature (6 credits)

*Politics and Public Administration*

POLI0004.	Bureaucracy and the public (6 credits)
POLI0005.	Capitalism and social justice (6 credits)
POLI0009.	Comparative politics (6 credits)
POLI0010.	Democracy and its critics (6 credits)
POLI0021.	Understanding global issues (6 credits)
POLI0045.	The political economy of the European union (6 credits)
POLI0067.	Liberalism and its limits (6 credits)

*Sociology*

SOCI0001.	A history of social theory (6 credits)
SOCI0024.	Modern social theory (6 credits)
SOCI0043.	Sociology of contemporary culture (6 credits)

## History

A minor in History shall consist of 24 credit units of second and third-year courses from the History Syllabus. As a prerequisite, 6 credit units in a first-year course or courses are required. Prospective minors are recommended to take **HIST1013. Doing history** and **HIST1003. Information technology for historical studies** as a minimum.

---

## Japanese Studies

### a) Minor in Japanese Language

A minor in Japanese Language shall consist of 24 credit units. Students with no prior qualifications in the Japanese language must take 24 credits from List A below.

#### List A

**JAPN2088 Japanese language II (Part 1) (6 credits)**

**JAPN2099 Japanese language II (Part 2) (6 credits)**

**JAPN2188 Japanese language III (Part 1) (6 credits)**

**JAPN2199 Japanese language III (Part 2) (6 credits)**

The pre-requisite courses are **JAPN1088 Japanese language I (Part 1) (9 credits)** and **JAPN1099 Japanese language I (Part 2) (9 credits)**

Students with prior qualifications in the Japanese language must take 12 credits from List B below.

#### List B

**JAPN2188 Japanese language III (Part 1) (6 credits)**

**JAPN2199 Japanese language III (Part 2) (6 credits)**

In addition, they must complete at least two third year *Japanese language-intensive* courses (each 6 credits) in the third year.

The pre-requisite courses are **JAPN1188 Japanese language II (Part 1) (6 credits)** and **JAPN1199 Japanese language II (Part 2) (6 credits)**.

### b) Minor in Japanese Culture

A minor in Japanese Culture shall consist of 24 credit units of second and third-year interdisciplinary-content courses from the Japanese Studies syllabus. Students must complete at least one *interdisciplinary content* course (6 credits) in each of the second and third years. As a pre-requisite, candidates must pass JAPN1011 Introduction to Japanese Studies (6 credits). The following courses may not be counted towards a minor in Japanese culture: core language courses and language intensive courses.

Candidates please refer to Japanese Studies Major for the course list.

---

## Language

A minor in a language shall consist of 24 credits of the second (12 credits) and third (12 credits) year courses in one of the languages listed below:

*Arabic, French, German, Italian, Portuguese, Spanish, Swedish and Thai.*

The recommended courses for a language minor: (All these courses have pre-requisites.)

- Arabic: LANG2052. Arabic II (second year, 12 credits)  
LANG3049. Arabic III (third year, 12 credits)
- French: LANG2001. French language II.1 (second year, 12 credits)  
LANG3001. French language III.1 (third year, 12 credits)
- German: LANG2004. German II.1 (second year, 12 credits)  
LANG3007. German III.1 (third year, 12 credits)
- Italian: LANG2010. Italian II (second year, 12 credits)  
LANG3012. Italian III (third year, 12 credits)
- Portuguese: LANG2024. Portuguese II (second year, 12 credits)  
LANG3026. Portuguese III (third year, 12 credits)
- Spanish: LANG2011. Spanish II (second year, 12 credits)  
LANG3013. Spanish III (third year, 12 credits)
- Swedish: LANG2023. Swedish II (second year, 12 credits)  
LANG3025. Swedish III (third year, 12 credits)
- Thai: LANG2022. Thai II (second year, 12 credits)  
LANG3024. Thai III (third year, 12 credits)

#### *Junior Level courses*

*The following courses will be offered to all BSocSc students as pre-requisites to senior level courses or as elective courses.*

- LANG1001. French I.1 (6 credits – 1<sup>st</sup> semester)
- LANG1002. French I.2 (6 credits – 2<sup>nd</sup> semester)
- LANG1003. German I.1 (6 credits – 1<sup>st</sup> semester)
- LANG1004. German I.2 (6 credits – 2<sup>nd</sup> semester)
- LANG1007. Italian I.1 (6 credits – 1<sup>st</sup> semester)
- LANG1008. Italian I.2 (6 credits – 2<sup>nd</sup> semester)
- LANG1021. Thai for beginners - Part I (6 credits – 1<sup>st</sup> semester)
- LANG1022. Thai for beginners - Part II (6 credits – 2<sup>nd</sup> semester)
- LANG1023. Swedish for beginners - Part I (6 credits – 1<sup>st</sup> semester)
- LANG1024. Swedish for beginners - Part II (6 credits – 2<sup>nd</sup> semester)
- LANG1025. Portuguese for beginners - Part I (6 credits – 1<sup>st</sup> semester)
- LANG1026. Portuguese for beginners - Part II (6 credits – 2<sup>nd</sup> semester)
- LANG1035. France today: An overview (3 credits)
- LANG1036. Arabic for beginners - Part I (6 credits – 1<sup>st</sup> semester)
- LANG1037. Arabic for beginners - Part II (6 credits – 2<sup>nd</sup> semester)
- LANG1038. Spanish language I.1 (6 credits – 1<sup>st</sup> semester)
- LANG1039. Spanish language I.2 (6 credits – 2<sup>nd</sup> semester)

#### *Senior level courses*

*The following courses will only be offered to candidates who minor in European Studies or Interdisciplinary minors from Faculty of Arts.*

- LANG0001. Introduction to Italian life and culture (3 credits – 2nd Semester)
- LANG0002. Introducing Germany and the Germans (3 credits – 1<sup>st</sup> semester)
- LANG0003. Introduction to Spanish culture (3 credits – 1<sup>st</sup> semester)
- LANG0005. Hispanic film and literature (3 credits – 2<sup>nd</sup> semester)
- LANG0006. Italian classical roots of European civilization (3 credits – 1<sup>st</sup> semester)
- LANG0007. From Viking to Volvo: an introduction to Sweden (3 credits – 2<sup>nd</sup> semester)
- LANG2031. Italian reading course (3 credits)
- LANG2032. Italian and business (3 credits)
- LANG2041. Representations of contemporary German society in the Media (3 credits – 1<sup>st</sup> semester)

- LANG2043. French Language and Culture I (3 credits – 1<sup>st</sup> semester)  
 LANG2044. French Language and Culture II (3 credits – 2<sup>nd</sup> semester)  
 LANG2047. French reading course (3 credits – 2<sup>nd</sup> semester)  
 LANG2048. French songs and lyrics (3 credits – 2<sup>nd</sup> semester)  
 LANG2050. A Profile of Italian Literature I (3 credits – 1<sup>st</sup> semester)  
 LANG2051. A Profile of Italian Literature (Contemporary Italian Literature) II (3 credits – 2<sup>nd</sup> semester)  
 LANG2055. Spanish for business I (3 credits)  
 LANG2056. Understanding Germany and the Germans (3 credits)  
 LANG2057. Spanish language and culture I (3 credits)  
 LANG2058. Spanish language and culture II (3 credits)  
 LANG3008. Reading Course (3 credits – 1<sup>st</sup> semester)  
 LANG3010. German Project (3 credits – 2<sup>nd</sup> semester)  
 LANG3022. French eastern narratives (3 credits – 2<sup>nd</sup> semester)  
 LANG3033. French media and advertising (3 credits – 2<sup>nd</sup> semester)  
 LANG3036. French society and cinema (3 credits – 1<sup>st</sup> semester)  
 LANG3048. Fairytale Princes, Nature Lovers and Revolutionaries – The German Romantics (3 credits – 2<sup>nd</sup> semester)  
 LANG3053. French literature: the 19<sup>th</sup> century (3 credits)  
 LANG3054. French literature: the 20<sup>th</sup> century (3 credits)  
 LANG3055. Spanish for business II (3 credits)

*The following courses will be treated as elective courses and will not be counted towards any major or minor requirement.*

- LANG3040. Italian in Italy (3 credits)  
 LANG3041. Portuguese in Portugal (3 credits)  
 LANG3043. Swedish in Sweden (3 credits)  
 LANG3044. Thai in Thailand (3 credits)  
 LANG3050. Arabic in an Arabic-speaking country (3 credits)
- 

## Linguistics

A minor in Linguistics shall consist of 24 credit units of second and third-year courses from the Linguistics syllabus. As a pre-requisite, students must pass the first-year course **LING1001. Introduction to linguistics.**

---

## Music

A minor in Music shall consist of 24 credit units of Level 200 and 300 courses from the music syllabus taken in the third to sixth semesters, with no more than 6 credit units taken in performance courses (MUSI2004, MUSI2032, MUSI2041, MUSI2046, MUSI2047, MUSI2051, MUSI3008, MUSI3012, MUSI3017, MUSI3018, and MUSI3019). As a pre-requisite, students must pass the following Level 100 courses in the first or second semester: MUSI1004 to musics of the world, and MUSI1021 Western music history 1.

---

## Interdisciplinary Minors

Candidates proceeding to their second year (or third semester, in respect of those admitted in or after 2002-03) of study of the curriculum in or after the academic year 2001-02 may select courses from the lists specified in the syllabuses to satisfy the requirements for up to two interdisciplinary minors but shall not be permitted to take more than 12 credits from one department/programme to satisfy the requirements of one minor. The same course shall not be taken to fulfil the requirements for a major and a minor, or for two minors.

The interdisciplinary minor programmes are as follows. Courses may have prerequisites; please refer to the syllabus of the relevant department/programme for the prerequisite(s).

## **1. Histories and Cultures of the Asia-Pacific Region**

A minor in the histories and cultures of the Asia-Pacific region will provide you with a broad general knowledge about history and thought in the region of which Hong Kong is a part. This will be useful regardless of what you are studying as a major and can thus be recommended for all students in the Faculty of Arts.

- AMER2014. A dream in the heart: varieties of Asian American culture (6 credits)
- CHIN2231. Religious Daoism and popular religions in China (3 credits)
- CHIN2241. History of Chinese civilization (6 credits)
- CHIN2254. Christianity and Chinese culture (3 credits)
- CHIN2264. Chinese eroticism (3 credits)
- CLIT2052. Chinese urban culture (6 credits)
- ENGL2066. Orientalism and linguistics (6 credits)
- ENGL2075. The idea of China (6 credits)
- FINE2048. Arts of Japan (6 credits)
- FINE2055. Crossing cultures: China and the outside world (6 credits)
- HIST2003. Twentieth-century China, Part I: from revolution to revolution, 1900-1949 (6 credits)
- HIST2035. The Bauhinia and the Lotus: Culture and history of the two SARS (6 credits)
- HIST2066. Narcotic culture: A history of drugs (6 credits)
- JAPN2014. China and Japan (6 credits)
- LING2010. Language and dialect (6 credits)
- MUSI2009. Topics in Asian music history (6 credits)
- MUSI2010. Music of China (6 credits)
- MUSI2029. Chinese music history (6 credits)
- MUSI2033. Music and culture in Bali: an overseas fieldtrip (6 credits)
- MUSI2054. The piano (6 credits)
- MUSI2055. Chinese opera (6 credits)
- MUSI2056. Defining the arts scene in Hong Kong (6 credits)
- PHIL2430. Chinese philosophy: Ethics (6 credits)
- PHIL2450. Zhuangzi (6 credits)

## **2. Contemporary China and Hong Kong**

This minor gives students with a general interest in China and Hong Kong a better understanding of physical, cultural and human environments of the two societies within the larger global and regional settings. The courses offered examine a range of contemporary development issues and future challenges faced by China and Hong Kong in an increasingly globalized world.

- CHIN2131. Contemporary Chinese literature (since 1949) I (6 credits)
- CHIN2132. Contemporary Chinese literature (since 1949) II (6 credits)
- CHIN2133. Contemporary Chinese literature (since 1949) III (6 credits)
- CLIT2064. Hong Kong culture: popular culture (6 credits)
- CLIT2074. Film and ideology in post-Mao China (6 credits)
- ENGL2075. The idea of China (6 credits)
- ENGL2097. Imagining Hong Kong (6 credits)
- FINE2034. Hong Kong art workshop (6 credits)
- FINE2036. Photography in the twentieth century (6 credits)
- FINE2051. Art, politics, and society in modern China (6 credits)

- 
- GEOG2054. Urban planning in practice in Hong Kong (6 credits)  
 GEOG2106. Globalizing China I: resources, politics, and population (6 credits)  
 HIST2004. Twentieth-century China, Part II: from revolution to modernization, 1949 to present (6 credits)  
 HIST2052. Social issues in Hong Kong history (6 credits)  
 HIST2068. The intellectual history of twentieth-century China (6 credits)  
 LING2010. Language and dialect (6 credits)  
 LING2033. Contrastive grammar of English and Chinese (6 credits)  
 MUSI2010. Music of China (6 credits)  
 MUSI2016. Music of contemporary Hong Kong (6 credits)  
 MUSI2056. Defining the arts scene in Hong Kong (6 credits)
- 

### **3. The West in Asia**

In 'The West in Asia,' courses examine various ways in which Western nations and people have influenced Asia in the past and present. You will gain a general appreciation for the many ways in which cross-cultural interaction affects societies, cultures, and individuals, as well as a specific understanding of how Euroamerican engagement with Asia has shaped the modern world.

- AMER2014. A dream in the heart: varieties of Asian American culture (6 credits)  
 CHIN2254. Christianity and Chinese culture (3 credits)  
 CLIT2045. Colonialism/postcolonialism (6 credits)  
 ENGL2066. Orientalism and linguistics (6 credits)  
 ENGL2095. The East: Asia in English writing (6 credits)  
 FINE2033. Cross-cultural interaction in the 19th century (6 credits)  
 FINE2034. Hong Kong art workshop (6 credits)  
 HIST2008. Meiji Japan, 1868-1912 (6 credits)  
 HIST2032. Case studies in women's history: Hong Kong and the US (6 credits)  
 HIST2053. The Cold War (6 credits)  
 LANG3022. French eastern narratives (3 credits)  
 LING2041. Language and information technology (6 credits)  
 PHIL2027. Rousseau (6 credits)  
 PHIL2040. Nietzsche (6 credits)  
 PHIL2080. Marxist philosophy (6 credits)
- 

### **4. Critical Thinking, Reading, and Writing**

'Critical thinking, reading and writing' refers to a set of skills for examining, evaluating and expressing ideas. These skills include knowing how to collect and present evidence, apply standards of logic and probability, compare opinions, decide what is relevant or irrelevant, and draw reasonable conclusions. This minor programme includes a selection of courses from different subject disciplines that either discuss these critical skills in detail or demonstrate them in action.

- CHIN2140. Modern Chinese language I (6 credits)  
 CHIN2143. Modern Chinese language II (6 credits)  
 CLIT2005. Literary and cultural theory (6 credits)  
 CLIT2066. Postmodernism (6 credits)  
 ENGL2007. Literary linguistics (6 credits)  
 ENGL2058. Narrative prose: a linguistic investigation (6 credits)  
 ENGL2087. Persuasion (6 credits)

FINE3006.	Art history methodology workshop (6 credits)
HIST3015.	The theory and practice of history (6 credits)
JAPN2034.	Education in contemporary Japanese society (6 credits)
LING2011.	Language and literacy in the information age (6 credits)
PHIL2110.	Knowledge (6 credits)
PHIL2130.	Philosophy of the sciences (6 credits)

---

## 5. The Culture of Business in the Modern World

The minor in The Culture of Business in the Modern World will prepare you to understand better the cultural dimensions of the economic processes affecting all of us. You will see that business is more than just economics; and money, stocks, and advertising are cultural forms that people and social institutions interpret and use in work, recreation, and commercial activities that are part of everyday life in the modern world.

AMER2018.	Show me the money: doing business with Americans (6 credits)
CHIN2337.	Journalistic translation (3 credits)
CHIN2338.	Translation of promotional material (3 credits)
CHIN2339.	Translation for administration and business (3 credits)
EUST2010.	European identity (6 credits)
GEOG2045.	Retail location (6 credits)
GEOG2056.	Tourism and the shrinking world (6 credits)
GEOG2057.	Leisure and recreation in modern society (6 credits)
HIST2027.	The foundations of international trade and finance in the modern world (6 credits)
HIST2064.	Sweat and abacus: Overseas Chinese in Southeast Asia (6 credits)
JAPN2010.	Japanese business: an anthropological introduction (6 credits)
JAPN2015.	Japanese enterprise groupings (6 credits)
LING2001.	Computational linguistics (6 credits)
LING2041.	Language and information technology (6 credits)
MUSI2015.	Popular music: from Cantopop to techno (6 credits)
MUSI2028.	The business of music (6 credits)
MUSI2054.	The piano (6 credits)
MUSI2056.	Defining the arts scene in Hong Kong (6 credits)
PHIL2070.	Pragmatism (6 credits)

---

## 6. Technology in the Humanities

The aim of this minor is to provide students with the opportunity to explore the relationship between technology and the humanities. Different aspects of technology will be examined in order to give students multiple perspectives on how the relationship between technology and the humanities has evolved, to critically evaluate the role of technology in the humanities, and to examine the range of opportunities available regarding the application of technology in the humanities.

AMER2015.	The American city (6 credits)
AMER2022.	What's on TV? Television and American culture (6 credits)
CHIN2243.	History of Chinese science and civilization (6 credits)
CLIT2026.	Digital culture and new media technologies I (6 credits)
CLIT2081.	Becoming Post-Human: animal bodies and virtual bodies (6 credits)
ENGL2037.	Science fiction (6 credits)
GEOG2019.	Environmental GIS (6 credits)

- 
- GEOG2100. People, society and the internet (6 credits)  
 HIST2065. Workshop in historical research (6 credits)  
 HIST2074. Historical studies using computers (6 credits)  
 LING2001. Computational linguistics (6 credits)  
 LING2041. Language and information technology (6 credits)  
 MUSI2013. Computer and electronic music (6 credits)  
 MUSI2015. Popular music: from Cantopop to techno (6 credits)  
 PHIL2220. The mind (6 credits)  
 PHIL2230. Philosophy and cognitive science (6 credits)
- 

## 7. Globalism: Cultures, Spaces, Languages

The term 'Globalism' suggests an organized phenomenon that could be studied through a coherent set of theoretical frameworks. The courses in this 'Minor' explore and challenge this understanding of 'Globalism'. They show how a global dynamic runs with varying intensities in visual and literary representations, in different times and places, and how the impact on each other of the 'global' and the 'local' can have very diverse effects on and meanings for different cultures and societies.

- AMER2014. A dream in the heart: varieties of Asian American culture (6 credits)  
 AMER2018. Show me the money: doing business with Americans (6 credits)  
 AMER2022. What's on TV? Television and American culture (6 credits)  
 CHIN2333. Culture and translation (6 credits)  
 CHIN2340. Film translation workshop (6 credits)  
 CHIN2341. Translating writings on art (3 credits)  
 CLIT2028. The city as cultural text (6 credits)  
 CLIT2050. Globalization and culture (6 credits)  
 ENGL2030. World Englishes (6 credits)  
 ENGL2092. Postcolonial English (6 credits)  
 EUST3010. European political and economic institutions and processes (6 credits)  
 FINE2030. Towards the global (6 credits)  
 FINE2036. Photography in the twentieth century (6 credits)  
 FINE2044. The whys of where: visual geographies of China and Japan (6 credits)  
 GEOG2061. Cultural heritage management and tourism (6 credits)  
 GEOG2079. Urban geography II: city structure and urban land use models (6 credits)  
 HIST2027. The foundations of international trade and finance in the modern world (6 credits)  
 HIST2046. The modern European city: Urban living and open spaces (6 credits)  
 HIST2063. Europe and modernity: cultures and identities, 1890-1940 (6 credits)  
 JAPN2018. Popular culture and artistic activity in Japan (6 credits)  
 LANG0001. Introduction to Italian life and culture (3 credits)  
 LANG0002. Introducing Germany and the Germans (3 credits)  
 LANG0003. Introduction to Spanish culture (3 credits)  
 LANG0006. Italian classical roots of European civilization (3 credits)  
 LCOM3001. Cultural dimensions of language and communication (6 credits)  
 LING2009. Languages of the world (6 credits)  
 MUSI2015. Popular music: from Cantopop to techno (6 credits)  
 MUSI2019. Music in society (3 credits)  
 MUSI2031. American music (6 credits)  
 MUSI2049. Music and power (3 credits)  
 MUSI2051. Rhythms of life: music and culture in West Africa (3 credits)  
 MUSI2054. The piano (6 credits)  
 MUSI2055. Chinese opera (6 credits)

- 
- MUSI2056. Defining the arts scene in Hong Kong (6 credits)  
 PHIL2362. Liberal democracy (6 credits)  
 PHIL2610. Philosophy of language (6 credits)
- 

## **8. Women and Gender**

Adopting both feminist and other cultural approaches, this 'Minor' offers in-depth explorations of women and gender issues. Questions of representation, history, language, and demographics will be raised across a number of disciplines and societies.

- CHIN2264. Chinese eroticism (3 credits)  
 CLIT2037. Gender and sexuality in contemporary Chinese literature and film (6 credits)  
 CLIT2051. Jane Austen and popular culture (6 credits)  
 CLIT2076. Fashioning femininities (6 credits)  
 ENGL2022. Women, feminism and writing I (6 credits)  
 ENGL2039. Language and gender (6 credits)  
 ENGL2080. Women, feminism and writing II (6 credits)  
 FINE2027. The formation of modernity: Art in Europe, 1840-1890 (6 credits)  
 FINE2032. Art and the portrayal of women (6 credits)  
 FINE2049. Art and gender in China (6 credits)  
 HIST2032. Case studies in women's history: Hong Kong and the U.S. (6 credits)  
 HIST2067. Sex, gender and modernity in China (6 credits)  
 HIST2081. Gender and history: beauty, fashion and sex (6 credits)  
 JAPN2035. Women in Japan and Hong Kong (6 credits)  
 LING2011. Language and literacy in the information age (6 credits)  
 LING2036. Child language (6 credits)  
 MUSI2035. Love, sex and death in music of the ancient and modern world (6 credits)  
 PHIL2011. Aristotle (6 credits)  
 PHIL2035. Philosophy of the Enlightenment (6 credits)
- 

## **9. Self-expression, Communication, and the Human Subject**

What is a self? Do different cultures have different selves? What does the self 'express' when we engage in creative thought and how are cultural forms used and changed. Are we limited by those cultural forms? In this minor, you will explore answers to these and related questions by investigating creative expression in various arts and cultural forms.

- AMER2022. What's on TV? Television and American culture (6 credits)  
 CHIN2144. Functional Chinese (6 credits)  
 CHIN2333. Culture and translation (6 credits)  
 CLIT2003. Modern European drama (6 credits)  
 CLIT2065. Hong Kong culture: representations of identity in literature and film (6 credits)  
 ENGL2089. Making Americans: Literature as ritual and renewal (6 credits)  
 FINE2029. Modernity and its discontents (6 credits)  
 FINE2046. Art and the human body (6 credits)  
 HIST2031. History through film (6 credits)  
 HIST2042. The history of sport (6 credits)  
 HIST2070. Stories of self: history through autobiography (6 credits)  
 JAPN3044. Japanese language II(b) (Part 1) (3 credits)  
 JAPN3055. Japanese language II(b) (Part 2) (3 credits)  
 JAPN3066. Japanese language III(a) (Part 1) (3 credits)  
 JAPN3077. Japanese language III(a) (Part 2) (3 credits)

- LANG0005. Hispanic film and literature (3 credits)  
 LING2002. Conversation analysis (6 credits)  
 LING2037. Bilingualism (6 credits)  
 MUSI2018. Understanding music (3 credits)  
 MUSI2035. Love, sex and death in music of the ancient and modern world (6 credits)  
 MUSI2048. Music, language, and meaning (6 credits)  
 MUSI2050. Representation of the supernatural in music (3 credits)  
 MUSI2056. Defining the arts scene in Hong Kong (6 credits)  
 PHIL2040. Nietzsche (6 credits)  
 PHIL2140. Philosophy of social science (6 credits)  
 PHIL2375. Philosophy of art (6 credits)
- 

## **SECOND MAJORS AND MINORS OFFERED BY THE FACULTY OF BUSINESS AND ECONOMICS**

### **Economics and Finance (Second Major)**

#### **For candidates admitted in or before the academic year 2004-2005**

Candidates who wish to double major in Economics and Finance must successfully complete:

- a) Pre-requisite requirement:  
 ECON1001. Introduction to economics I (6 credits)
- b) 12 credits of compulsory courses (in the third and fourth semester)
  - i) Either
    - ECON2102 Macroeconomic theory (6 credits)
    - or
    - ECON2114 Macroeconomic analysis (6 credits)
  - ii) Either
    - ECON2101 Microeconomic theory (6 credits)
    - or
    - ECON2113 Microeconomic analysis (6 credits)
- c) 36 credits of senior level courses in this school.

Economics and Finance courses are listed as below:

#### *Junior Level*

- ECON0003. Great Economists of our time (3 credits)  
 ECON1001. Introduction to economics I (6 credits)  
 ECON1002. Introduction to economics II (6 credits)  
 ECON1003. Analysis of economic data (6 credits)  
 FINA1002. Introduction to finance (6 credits)  
 BUSI0016. Introduction to finance (6 credits)

#### *Senior Level*

##### Semester III/IV

- ECON2101. Microeconomic theory (6 credits)  
 ECON2102. Macroeconomic theory (6 credits)  
 ECON2113. Microeconomic analysis (6 credits)  
 ECON2114. Macroeconomic analysis (6 credits)

## Semesters III to VI

- ECON0103. Economics of human resources (6 credits)
- ECON0104. Public finance (6 credits)
- ECON0106. Games and decisions (6 credits)
- ECON0107. History of economic thought (6 credits)
- ECON0109. Topics in macroeconomics (6 credits)
- ECON0204. The economics of finance (6 credits)
- ECON0205. Theories of investment (6 credits)
- ECON0206. Capital theory (6 credits)
- ECON0207. Monetary economics (6 credits)
- ECON0208. Economics of banking (6 credits)
- ECON0209. Finance and development (6 credits)
- ECON0210. Investment, technology, and economic growth (6 credits)
- ECON0301. Theory of international trade (6 credits)
- ECON0302. International finance (6 credits)
- ECON0401. Comparative economic systems (6 credits)
- ECON0402. Industrial organization (6 credits)
- ECON0403. The economics of property rights (6 credits)
- ECON0405. The economics of law (6 credits)
- ECON0406. The economy and the state (6 credits)
- ECON0501. Economic development (6 credits)
- ECON0503. Urban economics (6 credits)
- ECON0504. Transportation economics (6 credits)
- ECON0601. Economic development of China (6 credits)
- ECON0602. Foreign trade and investment in China (6 credits)
- ECON0603. The economic system of Hong Kong (6 credits)
- ECON0605. Economic history of China (6 credits)
- ECON0606. Current economic affairs (6 credits)
- ECON0701. Introductory econometrics (6 credits)
- ECON0702. Mathematical methods in economics (6 credits)
- ECON0703. Mathematical economics (6 credits)
- ECON0706. Uncertainty and information (6 credits)
- ECON0707. Economic forecasting (6 credits)
- ECON3108. Selected topics in price theory (6 credits)
- ECON3505. Project evaluation (6 credits)
- FINA0102. Financial markets and institutions (6 credits) or
- BUSI0017. Financial markets and institutions (6 credits)
- FINA0103. International banking (6 credits)
- FINA0104. Management of commercial banks (6 credits)
- FINA0105. International financial management (6 credits)
- FINA0106. Insurance: theory and practice (6 credits)
- FINA0301. Derivative securities (6 credits) or
- BUSI0069. Derivative securities (6 credits)
- FINA0302. Corporate finance or Theories of corporate finance (6 credits)
- FINA0303. Case studies in corporate finance (6 credits)
- FINA0401. Empirical finance (6 credits)
- FINA0402. Mathematical finance (6 credits)
- FINA0403. Financial engineering (6 credits)
- FINA0404. Financial modeling with EXCEL (6 credits)
- FINA0405. Interest rate models (6 credits)
- FINA0501. Asian financial institutions (6 credits)
- FINA0804. Fixed income securities (6 credits) or
- BUSI0056. Fixed income securities (6 credits)
- FINA0805. Real estate finance (6 credits)
- FINA1001. Financial statement analysis (6 credits)

- FINA2802. Investments or Investments and portfolio analysis (6 credits)  
FINA3806. Risk management (6 credits)  
FINA3807. Special topics in finance (6 credits)

Semester V/VI

- ECON3801. Reading course (6 credits)  
ECON3802. Dissertation (12 credits)  
FINA3601. Reading course (6 credits)  
FINA3602. Dissertation (12 credits)

**For candidates admitted in or after the academic year 2005-2006**

1. **Economics** (Second major)

Candidates who wish to double major in Economics must successfully complete:

- a) Pre-requisite requirement (in the first and second semester):  
ECON1001. Introduction to economics I (6 credits)  
ECON1002. Introduction to economics II (6 credits)

(ECON1002 Introduction to economics II can be taken in the first year or the second year.)

- b) 12 credits of compulsory courses (in the third and fourth semester)  
i) Either  
    ECON2102     Macroeconomic theory (6 credits)  
    or  
    ECON2114     Macroeconomic analysis (6 credits)  
ii) Either  
    ECON2101     Microeconomic theory (6 credits)  
    or  
    ECON2113     Microeconomic analysis (6 credits)

(ECON2101 Microeconomic theory/ECON2113 Microeconomic analysis and ECON2102 Macroeconomic theory/ECON2114 Macroeconomic analysis should be taken in the second year except with special permission from the Director of School of Economics and Finance.)

- c) 36 credits of senior level courses from the following list:

*Junior Level*

- ECON0003. Great Economists of our time (3 credits)  
ECON1001. Introduction to economics I (6 credits)  
ECON1002. Introduction to economics II (6 credits)  
ECON1003. Analysis of economic data (6 credits)  
FINA1002. Introduction to finance (6 credits)  
BUSI0016. Introduction to finance (6 credits)

*Senior Level*

Semester III/IV

*Course code   Course title*

- ECON2101. Microeconomic theory (6 credits) or  
ECON2113. Microeconomic analysis (6 credits)  
ECON2102. Macroeconomic theory (6 credits) or  
ECON2114. Macroeconomic analysis (6 credits)

## Semester III to VI

<i>Course code</i>	<i>Course title</i>
ECON0103.	Economics of human resources (6 credits)
ECON0104.	Public finance (6 credits)
ECON0106.	Games and decisions (6 credits)
ECON0107.	History of economic thought (6 credits)
ECON0109.	Topics in macroeconomics (6 credits)
ECON0204.	The economics of finance (6 credits)
ECON0205.	Theories of investment (6 credits)
ECON0206.	Capital theory (6 credits)
ECON0207.	Monetary economics (6 credits)
ECON0208.	Economics of banking (6 credits)
ECON0209.	Finance and development (6 credits)
ECON0210.	Investment, technology, and economic growth (6 credits)
ECON0301.	Theory of international trade (6 credits)
ECON0302.	International finance (6 credits)
ECON0401.	Comparative economic systems (6 credits)
ECON0402.	Industrial organization (6 credits)
ECON0403.	The economics of property rights (6 credits)
ECON0405.	The economics of law (6 credits)
ECON0406.	The economy and the state (6 credits)
ECON0501.	Economic development (6 credits)
ECON0503.	Urban economics (6 credits)
ECON0504.	Transportation economics (6 credits)
ECON0601.	Economic development of China (6 credits)
ECON0602.	Foreign trade and investment in China (6 credits)
ECON0603.	The economic system of Hong Kong (6 credits)
ECON0605.	Economic history in China (6 credits)
ECON0606.	Current economic affairs (6 credits)
ECON0701.	Introductory econometrics (6 credits)
ECON0702.	Mathematical methods in economics (6 credits)
ECON0703.	Mathematical economics (6 credits)
ECON0706.	Uncertainty and information (6 credits)
ECON0707.	Economic forecasting (6 credits)
ECON3108.	Selected topics in price theory (6 credits)
ECON3505.	Project evaluation (6 credits)
FINA0103.	International banking (6 credits)

## Semester V/VI

<i>Course code</i>	<i>Course title</i>
ECON3801.	Reading course (6 credits)
ECON3802.	Dissertation (12 credits)

2. **Finance** (Second major)

*For candidates admitted in the academic year 2005-2006.*

Candidates who wish to double major in Finance must successfully complete:

- a) Pre-requisite requirement (in the first and second semester):
  - ECON1001. Introduction to economics I (6 credits)
  - either
  - FINA1002. Introduction to finance (6 credits)
  - or
  - BUSI0016. Introduction to finance (6 credits)

(FINA1002 Introduction to finance/BUSI0016 Introduction to finance can be taken in the first year or the second year. Students are advised to take introductory courses in accounting, statistics and mathematics.)

- b) 18 credits of compulsory courses
  - i) Either
    - ECON2101 Microeconomic theory (6 credits)
    - or
    - ECON2113 Microeconomic analysis (6 credits)
  - ii) FINA0302. Theories of corporate finance (6 credits)
  - iii) FINA2802. Investments and portfolio analysis (6 credits)

(ECON2101 Microeconomic theory/ECON2113 Microeconomic analysis should be taken in the second year except with special permission from the Director of School of Economics and Finance.)

- c) 30 credits of senior level courses from the senior level list.

*For candidates admitted in or after the academic year 2006-2007*

Candidates who wish to double major in Finance must successfully complete:

- a) Pre-requisite requirement (in the first and second semester):
  - BUSI1002. Introduction to accounting (6 credits)
  - ECON1001. Introduction to economics I (6 credits)
  - FINA1003. Corporate finance (6 credits)

(It is advisable to take BUSI1002 Introduction to accounting in the first year first semester and FINA1003 Corporate finance in the second semester. Students are advised to take introductory courses in statistics and mathematics.)

- b) 18 credits of compulsory courses
  - i) Either
    - ECON2101 Microeconomic theory (6 credits)
    - or
    - ECON2113 Microeconomic analysis (6 credits)
  - ii) FINA0301. Derivative securities (6 credits)
  - iii) FINA2802. Investments and portfolio analysis (6 credits)

(ECON2101 Microeconomic theory/ECON2113 Microeconomic analysis should be taken in the second year except with special permission from the Director of School of Economics and Finance.)

- c) 30 credits of senior level courses from the senior level list:

*Junior Level*

- ECON0003. Great Economists of our time (3 credits)
- ECON1001. Introduction to economics I (6 credits)
- ECON1002. Introduction to economics II (6 credits)
- ECON1003. Analysis of economic data (6 credits)
- FINA1002. Introduction to finance (6 credits)

*Senior Level*

## Semester III/IV

<i>Course code</i>	<i>Course title</i>
ECON2101.	Microeconomic theory (6 credits) or
ECON2113.	Microeconomic analysis (6 credits)
ECON2102.	Macroeconomic theory (6 credits) or
ECON2114.	Macroeconomic analysis (6 credits)

## Semester III to VI

<i>Course code</i>	<i>Course title</i>
ECON0204.	The economics of finance (6 credits)
ECON0205.	Theories of investment (6 credits)
ECON0206.	Capital theory (6 credits)
ECON0207.	Monetary economics (6 credits)
ECON0208.	Economics of banking (6 credits)
ECON0209.	Finance and development (6 credits)
ECON0210.	Investment, technology, and economic growth (6 credits)
ECON0302.	International finance (6 credits)
ECON0602.	Foreign trade and investment in China (6 credits)
ECON0701.	Introductory econometrics (6 credits)
ECON0707.	Economic forecasting (6 credits)
ECON3505.	Project evaluation (6 credits)
FINA0102.	Financial markets and institutions (6 credits)
FINA0103.	International banking (6 credits)
FINA0104.	Management of commercial banks (6 credits)
FINA0105.	International financial management (6 credits)
FINA0106	Insurance: theory and practice (6 credits)
FINA0301.	Derivative securities (6 credits)
FINA0302.	Theories of corporate finance (6 credits)*
FINA0303.	Case studies in corporate finance (6 credits)
FINA0401.	Empirical finance (6 credits)
FINA0402.	Mathematical finance (6 credits)
FINA0403.	Financial engineering (6 credits)
FINA0404.	Financial modeling with EXCEL (6 credits)
FINA0405.	Interest rate models (6 credits)
FINA0501.	Asian financial institutions (6 credits)
FINA0804.	Fixed income securities (6 credits)
FINA0805.	Real estate finance (6 credits)
FINA1001.	Financial statement analysis (6 credits)
FINA3806.	Risk management (6 credits)
FINA3807.	Special topics in finance (6 credits)

## Semester V/VI

<i>Course code</i>	<i>Course title</i>
FINA3601.	Reading course (6 credits)
FINA3602	Dissertation (12 credits)

\* only open to student admitted to first year of study in 2004-2005 and 2005-2006.

### *Minors*

#### **1. Business**

A minor shall consist of 24 credits of senior level courses from the following courses. As a pre-requisite, candidates must pass BUSI1002 Introduction to accounting and either BUSI1004 Marketing or BUSI1007 Principles of management.

Business courses are listed as below:

##### *Junior Level*

- BUSI1002. Introduction to accounting (6 credits)
- BUSI1003. Introduction to management information systems (6 credits)
- BUSI1004. Marketing (6 credits)
- BUSI1006. Principles and practices of modern business (3 credits)
- BUSI1007. Principles of management (6 credits)

##### *Senior Level*

- BUSI1001. Business law (6 credits)
- BUSI1005. Organizational behaviour (6 credits)
- BUSI0001. Accounting systems and financial reporting in China (6 credits)
- BUSI0002. Accounting theory (6 credits)
- BUSI0003. Advanced financial accounting (6 credits)
- BUSI0004. Advertising management (6 credits)
- BUSI0006. Auditing (6 credits)
- BUSI0010. Company law (6 credits)
- FINA0302. Theories of corporate finance (6 credits)\*
- BUSI0012. Comparative and international management (6 credits)
- BUSI0013. Current business affairs (3 credits)
- BUSI0015. Entrepreneurship, creativity and innovation (6 credits)
- FINA0102. Financial markets and institutions (6 credits)
- BUSI0018. Hong Kong taxation (6 credits)
- BUSI0019. Intermediate accounting I (6 credits)
- BUSI0020. Intermediate accounting II (6 credits)
- BUSI0021. International accounting (6 credits)
- BUSI0022. International marketing (6 credits)
- BUSI0023. Operations and quality management (6 credits)
- FINA2802. Investments and portfolio analysis (6 credits)
- BUSI0025. Advanced topics in investments (6 credits)
- BUSI0026. Employment and labour relations (6 credits)
- BUSI0027. Management accounting I (6 credits)
- BUSI0028. Management accounting II (6 credits)
- BUSI0029. Human resource management and business strategy (6 credits)
- BUSI0030. Market competition and quality management (6 credits)
- BUSI0031. Marketing research (6 credits)
- BUSI0032. Multinational corporations (6 credits)
- BUSI0033. Organizational change and development (6 credits)
- BUSI0034. Human resource: theory and practice (6 credits)
- BUSI0035. Production and operations (6 credits)
- BUSI0036. Quantitative analysis for business decisions I (6 credits)
- BUSI0037. Quantitative analysis for business decisions II (6 credits)
- BUSI0038. Services marketing (6 credits)
- BUSI0039. The development of modern China (6 credits)
- BUSI0044. International business (6 credits)
- BUSI0045. Accounting seminar (6 credits)
- BUSI0046. Advanced information systems development (6 credits)
- BUSI0047. Applied organization (6 credits)

BUSI0048.	Business applications development (6 credits)
BUSI0049.	Business ethics (6 credits)
BUSI0050.	Consumer behaviour (6 credits)
BUSI0052.	Database development and management (6 credits)
BUSI0053.	Decision support and expert systems (6 credits)
BUSI0054.	Developing competencies in business creativity and innovation (6 credits)
BUSI0055.	Electronic commerce and virtual businesses (6 credits)
FINA0804.	Fixed income securities (6 credits)
BUSI0057.	High-performance work systems (6 credits)
BUSI0058.	Human resource planning and career management (6 credits)
BUSI0059.	Information systems analysis and design (6 credits)
BUSI0062.	Information systems management and strategy (6 credits)
BUSI0063.	Internet applications development (6 credits)
BUSI0064.	Leadership workshop (3 credits)
BUSI0065.	Information system security management (6 credits)
BUSI0066.	Marketing on the commercial internet (6 credits)
BUSI0067.	Mergers and acquisitions (6 credits)
BUSI0068.	Multimedia applications development (6 credits)
FINA0301.	Derivative securities (6 credits)
BUSI0070.	Reward and compensation (6 credits)
BUSI0071.	Strategic marketing management (6 credits)
BUSI0073.	Data communications and networking management (6 credits)
BUSI0074.	Telecommunications policy and business (6 credits)
BUSI0075.	Current topics in human resource management (6 credits)
BUSI0076.	Current topics in information systems (6 credits)
BUSI0077.	Selections and training (6 credits)
BUSI0078.	Compensation and benefits (6 credits)
BUSI0084.	Advanced topics in auditing (6 credits)
BUSI0085.	Advanced topics in taxation (6 credits)
BUSI0086.	Controllership (6 credits)
BUSI0088.	Artificial intelligence for business applications (6 credits)
BUSI0089.	Studies on China's compositeness (6 credits)
BUSI0090.	The European business environment (6 credits)
BUSI0091.	Business intelligent systems (6 credits)
BUSI0092.	Advanced database management and data mining (6 credits)
BUSI0093.	Enterprise resources planning systems (6 credits)
BUSI0094.	Managing e-business transformation (6 credits)
BUSI2111.	Information systems in accounting (6 credits)
BUSI2112.	Information systems audit and control (6 credits)
BUSI3011.	Corporate governance and social responsibility (6 credits)
BUSI3012.	International and cross-boundary trade law (6 credits)
BUSI3113.	Current topics on China accounting, auditing and taxation (6 credits)
BUSI3511.	Selected topics in marketing strategy (6 credits)
BUSI3512.	Developing marketing competence through branding (6 credits)

\* only open to students admitted to first year of study in 2004-2005 and 2005-2006.

## 2. Economics and Finance

*For candidates admitted in or before the academic year 2003-2004*

A minor in Economics and Finance shall consist of 24 credits of senior level courses listed from the major in Economics and Finance. As a pre-requisite, candidates must pass ECON1001 Introduction to economics I (6 credits).

### **3. Economics**

*For candidates admitted in or after the academic year 2004-2005*

Candidates who minor in Economics are required to take six courses from the following list:

Pre-requisite requirement

ECON1001. Introduction to economics I (6 credits)

ECON1002. Introduction to economics II (6 credits)

(ECON1002 Introduction to economics II can be taken in the first year or the second year.)

6 credits of compulsory courses

Either

ECON2101. Microeconomic theory (6 credits)

or

ECON2113. Microeconomic analysis (6 credits)

(ECON2101 Microeconomic theory/ECON2113 Microeconomic analysis should be taken in the second year except with special permission from the Director of School of Economics and Finance.)

Other courses

18 credits of senior level courses in the following list:

Semester III to IV

*Course code Course title*

ECON2101. Microeconomic theory (6 credits) or

ECON2113. Microeconomic analysis (6 credits)

ECON2102. Macroeconomic theory (6 credits) or

ECON2114. Macroeconomic analysis (6 credits)

Semester III to VI

ECON0103. Economics of human resources (6 credits)

ECON0104. Public finance (6 credits)

ECON0106. Games and decisions (6 credits)

ECON0107. History of economic thought (6 credits)

ECON0109. Topics in macroeconomics (6 credits)

ECON0204. The economics of finance (6 credits)

ECON0205. Theories of investment (6 credits)

ECON0206. Capital theory (6 credits)

ECON0207. Monetary economics (6 credits)

ECON0208. Economics of banking (6 credits)

ECON0209. Finance and development (6 credits)

ECON0210. Investment, technology, and economic growth (6 credits)

ECON0301. Theory of international trade (6 credits)

ECON0302. International finance (6 credits)

ECON0401. Comparative economic systems (6 credits)

ECON0402. Industrial organization (6 credits)

ECON0403. The economics of property rights (6 credits)

ECON0405. The economics of law (6 credits)

ECON0406. The economy and the state (6 credits)

ECON0501. Economic development (6 credits)

ECON0503. Urban economics (6 credits)

ECON0504. Transportation economics (6 credits)

ECON0601. Economic development of China (6 credits)

ECON0602. Foreign trade and investment in China (6 credits)

ECON0603. The economic system of Hong Kong (6 credits)

- ECON0605. Economic history in China (6 credits)  
 ECON0606. Current economic affairs (6 credits)  
 ECON0701. Introductory econometrics (6 credits)  
 ECON0702. Mathematical methods in economics (6 credits)  
 ECON0703. Mathematical economics (6 credits)  
 ECON0706. Uncertainty and information (6 credits)  
 ECON0707. Economic forecasting (6 credits)  
 ECON3108. Selected topics in price theory (6 credits)  
 ECON3505. Project evaluation (6 credits)  
 FINA0103. International banking (6 credits)

Semester V to VI

- ECON3801. Reading course (6 credits)
- 

#### **4. Finance**

*For candidates admitted in the academic year 2004-2005 and 2005-2006*

Candidates who minor in Finance are required to take six courses from the following list:

Pre-requisite requirement:

- ECON1001 Introduction to economics I (6 credits)

Either

- FINA1002. Introduction to finance (6 credits)

or

- BUSI0016. Introduction to finance (6 credits)

(FINA1002 Introduction to finance/BUSI0016 Introduction to finance can be taken in the first year or the second year. Students are advised to take introductory courses in accounting, statistics and mathematics.)

6 credits of compulsory courses

- FINA2802. Investments or Investments and portfolio analysis (6 credits)

Other courses

18 credits of senior level courses for the following list.

*For candidates admitted in or after the academic year 2006-2007*

Candidates who minor in Finance are required to take six courses from the following list:

- a) Pre-requisite requirement:  
 i) ECON1001 Introduction to economics I (6 credits)  
 ii) BUSI1002. Introduction to accounting (6 credits)  
 iii) FINA1003. Corporate finance (6 credits)

(It is advisable to take BUSI1002 Introduction to accounting in the first year first semester and FINA1003 Corporate finance in the second semester. Students are advised to take introductory courses in statistics and mathematics.)

- b) 6 credits of compulsory courses  
 FINA2802. Investments and portfolio analysis (6 credits)
- c) 18 credits of senior level courses from the following course list:

## Semester III to IV

<i>Course code</i>	<i>Course title</i>
ECON2101.	Microeconomic theory (6 credits) <u>or</u>
ECON2113.	Microeconomic analysis (6 credits)
ECON2102.	Macroeconomic theory (6 credits) <u>or</u>
ECON2114.	Macroeconomic analysis (6 credits)

## Semester III to VI

ECON0204.	The economics of finance (6 credits)
ECON0205.	Theories of investment (6 credits)
ECON0206.	Capital theory (6 credits)
ECON0207.	Monetary economics (6 credits)
ECON0208.	Economics of banking (6 credits)
ECON0209.	Finance and development (6 credits)
ECON0210.	Investment, technology, and economic growth (6 credits)
ECON0302.	International finance (6 credits)
ECON0602.	Foreign trade and investment in China (6 credits)
ECON0701.	Introductory econometrics (6 credits)
ECON0707.	Economic forecasting (6 credits)
ECON3505.	Project evaluation (6 credits)
FINA0102.	Financial markets and institutions (6 credits)
FINA0103.	International banking (6 credits)
FINA0104.	Management of commercial banks (6 credits)
FINA0105.	International financial management (6 credits)
FINA0106	Insurance: theory and practice (6 credits)
FINA0301.	Derivative securities (6 credits)
FINA0302.	Corporate finance or Theories of corporate finance (6 credits) *
FINA0303.	Case studies in corporate finance (6 credits)
FINA0401.	Empirical finance (6 credits)
FINA0402.	Mathematical finance (6 credits)
FINA0403.	Financial engineering (6 credits)
FINA0404.	Financial modeling with EXCEL (6 credits)
FINA0405.	Interest rate models (6 credits)
FINA0501.	Asian financial institutions (6 credits)
FINA0804.	Fixed income securities (6 credits)
FINA0805.	Real estate finance (6 credits)
FINA1001.	Financial statement analysis (6 credits)
FINA3806.	Risk management (6 credits)
FINA3807.	Special topics in finance (6 credits)

## Semester V to VI

<i>Course code</i>	<i>Course title</i>
FINA3601.	Reading course (6 credits)

\* only open to student admitted to first year of study in 2004-2005 and 2005-2006.

---

**MINORS OFFERED BY THE FACULTY OF EDUCATION****Information Management**

This Minor in Information Management provides an introductory foundation for students in other faculties to consider a career in the dynamic field of information management. The courses listed below are existing BSc[IM] courses and students in this Minor programme will take them with BSc[IM] students.

## **Requirement**

Minimum Entry Requirement: Nil

Minimum Credit Requirement: 36 credits

Impermissible Combination: Nil for the Minor as a whole; no pre-requisites for any of the courses

Quota: 10 students

## **Assessment**

Assignment: 100% coursework

## **Programme structure and courses available**

Students may select 36 credits from any of the courses below. They may focus on one of the three areas listed below or choose courses from different areas.

### 1. Information design and architecture

- BSIM0009 Database systems and information warehousing (6 credits)
- BSIM0010 Digital libraries: principles and applications (6 credits)
- BSIM0004 Information retrieval (6 credits)
- BSIM0007 Metadata (6 credits)
- BSIM0008 Networks and telecommunications (6 credits)
- BSIM0012 Records management (6 credits)
- BSIM0014 User-based systems analysis (6 credits)
- BSIM0013 Web services & digital publishing (6 credits)

### 2. Management and policy

- BSIM0002 Information literacy (3 credits)
- BSIM0001 Information management foundations (6 credits)
- BSIM0003 Information policy (6 credits)
- BSIM0005 Information society issues (6 credits)
- BSIM0006 Knowledge management (6 credits)
- BSIM0011 Project management (6 credits)
- BSIM0012 Records management (6 credits)
- BSIM0016 Social and organizational issues of information management (6 credits)

### 3. Users and society

- BSIM0010 Digital libraries: principles and applications (6 credits)
- BSIM0002 Information literacy (3 credits)
- BSIM0004 Information retrieval (6 credits)
- BSIM0005 Information society issues (6 credits)
- BSIM0006 Knowledge management (6 credits)
- BSIM0015 Reading and understanding research in information management (3 credits)
- BSIM0016 Social and organizational issues of information management (6 credits)
- BSIM0014 User-based systems analysis (6 credits)

Students in their final year of study may choose to do a project worth's 6 credits in the area of information management.

- BSIM4999 Project (6 credits)

## **MINORS OFFERED BY THE FACULTY OF ENGINEERING**

### **Department of Computer Science**

The Department of Computer Science has a long tradition of offering IT courses to students of other departments. To declare a “Minor in Computer Science”, students are required to pass 2 core courses and at least 4 elective courses in computer science. All these courses are of 6 credit-units. They will be taught in a single semester with 3 hours of lectures per week. Assessment of each course will be based on a three-hour written examination and in-course assessment in a ratio as indicated below.

Students are also welcome to take any of the following list of courses as broadening courses.

#### **Core Courses (Junior level):**

- CSIS1117. Computer programming I (6 credits)
- CSIS1119. Introduction to data structures and algorithms (6 credits) [for intake of 2005 or before]
- CSIS1122. Computer programming II [for intake of 2006 and after]

#### **Elective Courses (Senior level):**

- CSIS1119. Introduction to data structures and algorithms [for intake of 2006 and after]
- CSIS0250. Design and analysis of algorithms (6 credits)
- CSIS0270. Artificial intelligence (6 credits)
- CSIS0271. Computer graphics (6 credits)
- CSIS0278. Introduction to database management systems (6 credits)
- CSIS0293. Introduction to theory of computation
- CSIS0297. Introduction to software engineering (6 credits)
- CSIS0311. Legal aspects of computing (6 credits)
- CSIS0315. Multimedia computing and applications (6 credits)
- CSIS0317. Computer vision (6 credits)
- CSIS0320. Electronic commerce technology (6 credits)
- CSIS0322. Internet and the World Wide Web (6 credits)
- CSIS0396. Object-oriented programming and Java (6 credits)
- CSIS0521. Concepts and tools for software development (6 credits)

## **MINOR OFFERED BY THE FACULTY OF LAW**

### **Legal Studies**

This Minor aims to provide social sciences students an opportunity to have some exposure to legal issues in an area which may interest them and/or are related to their undergraduate degree.

Candidates who wish to minor in Legal Studies are required to have obtained a minimum of grade B in Use of English in HKALE or equivalent and must successfully complete 36 credits in the Years II and III of studies from the following lists:

a) Compulsory courses (18 credits) – Year II

- LLAW1001. and LLAW1002. Law of contract I and Law of contract II (12 credits)  
And either  
LLAW1005. Law of tort I (6 credits)  
Or  
LLAW1008. The legal system (6 credits)

b) Optional courses (18 credits) – Year III

- LLAW1005. and LLAW1006. Law of tort I \*(6 credits) / Law of tort II (6 credits)
- LLAW1008. The legal system \* (6 credits)
- LLAW1009. Law and society (6 credits)
- LLAW2001. Constitutional law (6 credits)
- LLAW2003. and LLAW2004. Criminal law I & II (12 credits)
- LLAW2009. Introduction to Chinese law (6 credits)
- LLAW3001. Introduction to legal theory (6 credits)
- LLAW3007. Alternative dispute resolution (6 credits)
- LLAW3010. Law of business associations (6 credits)
- LLAW3034. Labour law (6 credits)
- LLAW3040. Medico-Legal issues (6 credits)
- LLAW3043. Principles of family law (6 credits)
- LLAW3044. Public international law (6 credits)
- LLAW3046. Child and the law (6 credits)
- LLAW3062. Human rights in China (6 credits)
- LLAW3080. Governance and law (6 credits)
- LLAW3069. Regulation of financial markets (6 credits)
- LLAW3093. Administrative law (6 credits)

\* Unless already taken as a compulsory requirement

All the courses listed above are regarded as senior level courses.

Not all LLAW3XXX courses may be offered every year..

The recommended normal study plan is that the students would have to satisfy the compulsory requirement (18 credits) in the second year of their studies, and then select 3 courses (18 credits) from the optional courses to take in their final year. It is not recommended that students take law courses in their first year.

Since there is the possibility of timetable clashes, students who are unable to take all 18 credits of the compulsory requirement in the second year of studies should at least take 12 credits in that year. Students may take a maximum of 24 credits of law courses in the second year of studies. Students moving from the second year to the third year may not proceed to the optional courses unless they pass at least 12 credits of the compulsory requirement in the second year of studies (with supplementary exams if necessary).

## **MAJORS AND MINORS OFFERED BY THE FACULTY OF SCIENCE**

The Faculty of Science offers the following majors and minors to students in the Faculty of Social Sciences starting from the academic year 2004-05:

**Majors:** *Biochemistry, Biology, Biotechnology, Chemistry, Earth Sciences, Ecology and Biodiversity, Environmental Protection, Food and Nutritional Science, Material Science, Mathematics, Mathematics/Physics, Physics, Risk Management and Statistics*

**Minors:** *Actuarial Studies, Astronomy, Biochemistry, Biology, Biotechnology, Chemistry, Earth Sciences, Ecology & Biodiversity, Environmental Protection, Food and Nutritional Science, General Science, Mathematics, Physics, Risk Management and Statistics*

***For candidates admitted in or before 2006-2007 academic year.***

### **Major in Biochemistry (for candidates admitted in 2006 or before)**

Biochemistry, strengthened with molecular biology, is a field with enormous applications to our daily lives. It also is a discipline of sublime fascination. Our understanding of the biochemical bases of

various life processes has greatly improved human welfare, particularly the medical and nutritional aspects. Further advances in this rapidly expanding field of knowledge, including building and establishing new conceptual frameworks, development of novel methodologies and techniques, should pave way to even more spectacular insights into nature and lead to a better control of our destiny.

The Major in Biochemistry offered by the Department of Biochemistry is designed to provide students with both basic and advanced knowledge in modern biochemistry and molecular biology. Our goal is to develop and equip students with enough critical thinking and analytical skills so that they can embark on a career in biochemical sciences.

**Minimum Entry Requirement** : AL Chemistry or equivalent

**Minimum Credit Requirement** : 72 credits

(24 credits introductory level & 48 credits advanced level courses)

**Impermissible Combination** : Minor in Biochemistry

### **Required courses (72 credits)**

	<b>Credits</b>
<b>1. Introductory level courses (24 credits)</b>	
BIOC1001 Basic Biochemistry	6
BIOC1003 Introduction to Molecular Genetics	6
CHEM1206 General and Analytical Chemistry <sup>1</sup> <b>OR</b>	
CHEM1301 Basic Inorganic Chemistry <sup>2</sup>	6

**Plus** one of the following courses:

CHEM1401 Fundamentals of Organic Chemistry <sup>3</sup>	6
CHEM1406 Basic Organic Chemistry <sup>3</sup>	6

### **2. Advanced level courses (48 credits)**

BIOC2601 Metabolism	6
BIOC2603 Principles of Molecular Genetics	6
BIOC2604 Essential Techniques in Biochemistry and Molecular Biology	6
BIOC3610 Advanced Biochemistry I	6
BIOC3611 Advanced Biochemistry II	6
BIOC3613 Molecular Biology of the Gene	6
BIOC3615 Advanced Techniques in Biochemistry & Molecular Biology	6
BIOL2301 Protein Structure and Function	6

Note: <sup>1</sup> For candidates admitted in 2006.

<sup>2</sup> For candidates admitted in 2004 or 2005.

<sup>3</sup> CHEM1401 and CHEM1406 are mutually exclusive.

*Important! Ultimate responsibility rests with students to ensure that the required pre-requisites and co-requisite of selected courses are fulfilled. Students must take and pass all required courses in the selected major or/and minor in order to satisfy the degree graduation requirements.*

### **Major in Biology** (for candidates admitted in 2006 or before)

Biology has developed into a broad and diverse field of study. This Major explores many aspects of the biological sciences, thereby providing a good general background in biology relevant for a wide range of job options. In their third year, students will be able to select from a range of interesting courses to suit their own interests.

<b>Minimum Entry Requirement</b>	:	AL Biology or equivalent
<b>Minimum Credit Requirement</b>	:	72 credits (24 credits introductory level & 48 credits advanced level courses)
<b>Impermissible Combination</b>	:	Major in Biotechnology; Ecology & Biodiversity; Environmental Protection; Food & Nutritional Science
		Minor in Biology

### **Required courses (72 credits)**

	<b>Credits</b>
<b>1. Introductory level courses (24 credits)</b>	

At least 24 credits of the following courses:

BIOL1106	Genetics	3
BIOL1107	Introduction to Developmental Biology & Reproduction	3
BIOL1119	Introductory Microbiology	6
BIOL1121	Animal Form and Functions	3
BIOL1122	Functional Biology	6
BIOL0601 (ECOL0020)	Ecology of Hong Kong	3
BIOL0603 (ECOL0040)	Ecology and Evolution	3
BIOL0604 (ECOL0041)	Evolutionary Diversity	6
BIOL0605 (ECOL0042)	Ecology Field Course	3

### **2. Advanced level courses (48 credits)**

BIOL2303	Introduction to Molecular Biology	6
BIOL2606 (ECOL2004)	Environmental Microbiology <sup>1</sup>	OR
ECOL2022	Biodiversity <sup>2</sup>	6

**Plus** at least one of the following courses:

BIOL2112	Plant Physiology	6
BIOL2215	Animal Physiology	6

**Plus** at least 30 credits of advanced level courses (BIOL2000, BIOL3000, ECOL2000 or ECOL3000 level) of which 12 credits at BIOL2000 or ECOL2000 level and 12 credits at BIOL3000 or ECOL3000 level, subject to prerequisite requirements.

Note: <sup>1</sup> For candidates admitted in 2005 or 2006.

<sup>2</sup> For candidates admitted in 2004.

*Important! Ultimate responsibility rests with students to ensure that the required pre-requisites and co-requisite of selected courses are fulfilled. Students must take and pass all required courses in the selected major or/and minor in order to satisfy the degree graduation requirements.*

### **Major in Biotechnology (for candidates admitted in 2006 or before)**

As the 21<sup>st</sup> Century opens, advances in biotechnology are accelerating at a remarkable pace. There are many exciting discoveries that have improved modern society, in terms of health, nature and economic development. This Major will first equip you with a solid background in molecular biology, microbiology, biochemistry and cell biology. Based on your interests, you will then further acquire knowledge in the specialized fields of medicine, diagnostics, agriculture, aquaculture, etc, from the advanced courses. Employment opportunities in various sectors of industry and Government, including R&D, manufacturing, sales, and customer service, are available to our students.

**Minimum Entry Requirement** : AL Biology or equivalent

**Minimum Credit Requirement** : 72 credits

(24 credits introductory level & 48 credits advanced level courses)

**Impermissible Combination** : Major in Biology;  
Food & Nutritional Science  
Minor in Biotechnology

### **Required courses (72 credits)**

1. Introductory level courses (24 credits)		Credits
At least 24 credits of the following courses:		
BIOC1001	Basic Biochemistry OR BIOL1125 Introduction to Biochemistry	6
BIOL0128	Biological Techniques, Instrumentation and Data Processing	6
BIOL1106	Genetics	3
BIOL1107	Introduction to Developmental Biology & Reproduction	3
BIOL1119	Introductory Microbiology	6
BIOL1122	Functional Biology	6

## **2. Advanced level courses (48 credits)**

BIOL2115	Cell Biology & Cell Technology	6
BIOL2301	Protein Structure and Function	6
BIOL2303	Introduction to Molecular Biology	6
BIOL3315	Animal Biotechnology	6
BIOL3316	Plant Biotechnology	6
BIOL3317	Microbial Biotechnology	6

**Plus** at least 12 credits of the following courses:

BIOL2004	Bioexploitation of Filamentous Fungi	3
BIOL2111	Molecular Microbiology	6
BIOL2114	Plant Biochemistry and Molecular Biology	6
BIOL2116	Genetics I	6
BIOL2202	General Parasitology <sup>1</sup>	6
BIOL2203	Reproduction & Reproductive Biotechnology	6
BIOL2205	Basic Immunology	6
BIOL2207	Endocrinology	6
BIOL2209	Developmental Biology	6
BIOL2215	Animal Physiology	6
BIOL2217	General Parasitology <sup>2</sup>	3
BIOL2302	Fermentation Technology	6
BIOL2515	Food Microbiology	6
BIOL3212	Applied Immunology	6
BIOL3213	Advanced Techniques and Instrumentation in Animal Biology	6
BIOL3214	General Virology	6
BIOL3307	Biotechnology Industry	6
BIOL3522	Nutrigenomics	3

Note: <sup>1</sup> For candidates admitted in 2004, BIOL2202 will not be offered from 2006-07.

<sup>2</sup> For candidates admitted in 2005 or 2006.

*Important! Ultimate responsibility rests with students to ensure that the required pre-requisites and co-requisite of selected courses are fulfilled. Students must take and pass all required courses in the selected major or/and minor in order to satisfy the degree graduation requirements.*

### **Major in Chemistry** (for candidates admitted in 2006 or before)

The dictionary defines chemistry as “the scientific study of the structure of substances, how they react when combined or in contact with one another, and how they behave under different conditions”. How chemists actually do this to investigate the properties and reactions of matter vary widely and are constantly undergoing change as new methods are discovered, new equipment is invented, and new techniques are developed. Chemistry is a central science, which interacts with many other disciplines. The aim of this Major is to provide students with a solid training in the basic areas of chemistry such as physical, inorganic, organic, applied and analytical chemistry. Through a variety of training, the Major can equip students with skills and experience in both theoretical and experimental investigations that are very important for their future career goals in the hi-tech and knowledge-based economy.

**Minimum Entry Requirement** : AL Chemistry or equivalent

**Minimum Credit Requirement** : 72 credits

(24 credits introductory level & 48 credits advanced level courses)

**Impermissible Combination** : Minor in Chemistry

#### **Required courses (72 credits)**

	<b>Credits</b>
<b>1. Introductory level courses (24 credits)</b>	
CHEM1206 General and Analytical Chemistry	6
CHEM1301 Basic Inorganic Chemistry	6
CHEM1406 Basic Organic Chemistry	6
CHEM1506 Basic Physical Chemistry	6
<b>2. Advanced level courses (48 credits)</b>	
CHEM2202 Chemical Instrumentation	6
CHEM2302 Intermediate Inorganic Chemistry	9
CHEM2402 Intermediate Organic Chemistry	9
CHEM2503 Intermediate Physical Chemistry	9
CHEM2507 Principles and Applications of Spectroscopic Techniques <b>OR</b>	
CHEM2510 Principles and Applications of Spectroscopic Techniques	6

**Plus** at least 9 credits of advanced level Chemistry courses (CHEM2000 or CHEM3000 level) of which 6 credits must be at CHEM3000 level, subject to prerequisite requirements.

*Important! Ultimate responsibility rests with students to ensure that the required pre-requisites and co-requisite of selected courses are fulfilled. Students must take and pass all required courses in the selected major or/and minor in order to satisfy the degree graduation requirements.*

### **Major in Earth Sciences** (for candidates admitted in 2006 or before)

In Earth Sciences, we study the nature and evolution of our planet. Geoscientists use their knowledge to increase our understanding of Earth processes and resources to improve the quality of human life. The Earth Science Major offers students an opportunity to learn about local and regional geological and environmental problems. The primary objective is to give students a robust training in the basics of Earth sciences as well as technical skills in certain specialized areas. Both theoretical and applied subjects such as mineralogy (the study of minerals), petrology (the study of rocks), geophysics, geochemistry, surficial processes, sedimentology, earth history, structural geology, fieldwork, regional geology, earth resources, environmental geology, hydrogeology and engineering geology are offered.

<b>Minimum Entry Requirement</b>	: Nil	
<b>Minimum Credit Requirement</b>	: 72 credits	(24 credits introductory level & 48 credits advanced level courses)
<b>Impermissible Combination</b>	: Minor in Earth Sciences	

### Required courses (72 credits)

	<b>Credits</b>
<b>1. Introductory level courses (24 credits)</b>	
EASC0101	Maps, Mapping and Field Geology
EASC0105	Earth Through Time
EASC0116	Introduction to Physical Geology
EASC1106	Introduction to Petrology

### **2. Advanced level courses (48 credits)**

**Any** 48 credits of advanced level Earth Sciences courses (EASC2000 or EASC3000 level), subject to prerequisite requirements.

*Important! Ultimate responsibility rests with students to ensure that the required pre-requisites and co-requisite of selected courses are fulfilled. Students must take and pass all required courses in the selected major or/and minor in order to satisfy the degree graduation requirements.*

### **Major in Ecology & Biodiversity** (for candidates admitted in 2006 or before)

Understanding biological diversity, the relationships between animals and their environments, and how humans interact with both is critical for conserving the social and economic benefits yielded by the natural world, without irreversibly destroying or degrading it. This Major introduces biodiversity at all levels, genes, species and ecosystems, provides a strong academic background for studying and researching in these topics. It also fosters an appreciation for the richness of local and regional biodiversity. There are many opportunities, both within Hong Kong and internationally, for graduates in this field.

<b>Minimum Entry Requirement</b>	: AL Biology or equivalent	
<b>Minimum Credit Requirement</b>	: 72 credits	(24 credits introductory level & 48 credits advanced level courses)
<b>Impermissible Combination</b>	: Major in Biology; Environmental Protection Minor in Ecology & Biodiversity; Environmental Protection	

### Required courses (72 credits)

	<b>Credits</b>
<b>1. Introductory level courses (24 credits)</b>	
BIOL0601 (ECOL0020)	Ecology of Hong Kong
BIOL0603 (ECOL0040)	Ecology and Evolution
BIOL0604 (ECOL0041)	Evolutionary Diversity
BIOL0605 (ECOL0042)	Ecology Field Course

**Plus** at least 9 credits of the following courses:

BIOL0602 (ECOL0036)	Origins of Life and Astrobiology	3
BIOL1119	Introductory Microbiology	6

CHEM1001	Chemical Principles for Earth and Life Sciences	6
EASC0105	Earth Through Time	6

## 2. Advanced level courses (48 credits)

BIOL2608 (ECOL2006)	Biometrics	6
BIOL2609 (ECOL2007)	Molecular Ecology	6
BIOL2611 (ECOL2013)	Systematics & Phylogenetics	6
BIOL2612 (ECOL2014)	Conservation Biology <sup>1</sup> OR ECOL2022 Biodiversity <sup>2</sup>	6

**Plus** 24 credits from one of the following options:

**Either Ecology option:**

BIOL2606 (ECOL2004)	Environmental Microbiology	6
BIOL2615 (ECOL2023)	Freshwater Ecology	6
BIOL2617 (ECOL2028)	Coastal Ecology	6
BIOL2619 (ECOL2032)	Terrestrial Ecology	6

**Or Marine Biology option:**

BIOL2607 (ECOL2005)	Fish Biology	6
BIOL2610 (ECOL2011)	Biological Oceanography	6
BIOL2617 (ECOL2028)	Coastal Ecology	6
BIOL3621 (ECOL3018)	Fisheries and Mariculture	6

**Or Microbiology option:**

BIOL2004	Bioexploitation of Filamentous Fungi	3
BIOL2111	Molecular Microbiology	6
BIOL2515	Food Microbiology	6
BIOL2606 (ECOL2004)	Environmental Microbiology	6
BIOL2613 (ECOL2015)	Fungal Diversity	3
BIOL2614 (ECOL2016)	Environmental Toxicology	6

Note: <sup>1</sup> For candidates admitted in 2005 or 2006.

<sup>2</sup> For candidates admitted in 2004.

*Important! Ultimate responsibility rests with students to ensure that the required pre-requisites and co-requisite of selected courses are fulfilled. Students must take and pass all required courses in the selected major or/and minor in order to satisfy the degree graduation requirements.*

### Major in Environmental Protection (for candidates admitted in 2006 or before)

Humans are responsible for modification and degradation of nature yet it is only by human actions that we can protect habitats, ecosystems and the organisms that they contain for future generations. This Major helps students understand the causes of environmental degradation, and the ways in which they can be reduced or mitigated, including topics such as environmental impact assessment, ecotoxicology and bioremediation. Conservation biology and fisheries are also important components of this Major, which aims to provide the intellectual and practical skills needed for professionals working in environmental protection and related jobs.

<b>Minimum Entry Requirement</b>	: AL Biology or equivalent
<b>Minimum Credit Requirement</b>	: 72 credits (24 credits introductory level & 48 credits advanced level courses)
<b>Impermissible Combination</b>	: Major in Biology; Ecology & Biodiversity Minor in Ecology & Biodiversity; Environmental Protection

## **Required courses (72 credits)**

1. Introductory level courses (24 credits)		Credits
BIOL0601 (ECOL0020)	Ecology of Hong Kong	3
BIOL0603 (ECOL0040)	Ecology and Evolution	3
BIOL0604 (ECOL0041)	Evolutionary Diversity	6
BIOL0605 (ECOL0042)	Ecology Field Course	3
BIOL1119	Introductory Microbiology	6

**Plus** at least one of the following courses:

BIOL0602 (ECOL0036)	Origins of Life and Astrobiology	3
CHEM1001	Chemical Principles for Earth and Life Sciences	6
EASC0105	Earth Through Time	6

## **2. Advanced level courses (48 credits)**

At least 48 credits of the following courses:

BIOL2606 (ECOL2004)	Environmental Microbiology	6
BIOL2608 (ECOL2006)	Biometrics	6
BIOL2609 (ECOL2007)	Molecular Ecology	6
BIOL2612 (ECOL2014)	Conservation Biology	6
BIOL2614 (ECOL2016)	Environmental Toxicology	6
BIOL3621 (ECOL3018)	Fisheries and Mariculture	6
BIOL3622 (ECOL3027)	Environmental Impact Assessment	6
BIOL3624 (ECOL3034)	Environmental Monitoring and Remediation Techniques	6
CHEM2002	Instrumental Chemical Analysis	6
CHEM2102	Environmental Chemistry	6
ECOL2022	Biodiversity <sup>1</sup>	6

Note: <sup>1</sup> For candidates admitted in 2004.

*Important! Ultimate responsibility rests with students to ensure that the required pre-requisites and co-requisite of selected courses are fulfilled. Students must take and pass all required courses in the selected major or/and minor in order to satisfy the degree graduation requirements.*

**Major in Food & Nutritional Science** (for candidates admitted in 2006 or before)

This is a challenging area of interdisciplinary study. The science of food and nutrition aims at improving the quality of life through the understanding of interactions among food, environment and the human body. This Major will appeal to those who have a genuine interest in the food system and/or nutrition. Beginning with a handful of core courses, you will be able to mix and match advanced courses that suit your personal interest, be it food product development and analysis, metabolism and body function or nutrient-gene interaction. In the era where food safety, and diet and health take up news headlines this Major has been extremely popular.

**Minimum Entry Requirement** : AL / AS Biology and AL / AS Chemistry or equivalent

**Minimum Credit Requirement** : 75 credits

(27 credits introductory level & 48 credits advanced level courses)

**Impermissible Combination**: Major in Biology; Biotechnology  
Minor in Food & Nutritional Science

### **Required courses (75 credits)**

	<b>Credits</b>
<b>1. Introductory level courses (27 credits)</b>	
BIOC1001 Basic Biochemistry <b>OR</b> BIOL1125 Introduction to Biochemistry	6
BIOL0002 Introduction to Food and Nutritional Science	3
BIOL1122 Functional Biology	6
BIOL1123 Food Chemistry	3
BIOL1513 Food Science Laboratory	3
BIOL1514 Nutrition and Metabolism	6
<b>2. Advanced level courses (48 credits)</b>	
BIOL2501 Food Processing and Preservation	6
BIOL2505 Food Safety and Quality Management	6
BIOL2515 Food Microbiology	6
BIOL2517 Food Analysis	3
BIOL2518 Laboratory in Nutritional Science	3
BIOL2519 Essential Nutrients & Functional Foods	6
BIOL3526 Advanced Laboratory in Nutritional Science	3
<b>Plus</b> at least 15 credits of the following courses:	
BIOL2004 Bioexploitation of Filamentous Fungi	3
BIOL2202 General Parasitology <sup>1</sup>	6
BIOL2205 Basic Immunology	6
BIOL2215 Animal Physiology	6
BIOL2217 General Parasitology <sup>2</sup>	3
BIOL2302 Fermentation Technology	6
BIOL2503 Grain Production & Utilization	6
BIOL2507 Meat and Dairy Science	6
BIOL2520 Food Toxicology	3
BIOL2521 Food Engineering	3
BIOL3516 Nutrition and Brain Function	3
BIOL3522 Nutrigenomics	3
BIOL3523 Principles of Chinese Medicated Diet	3
BIOL3524 Diet and Disease	3
BIOL3525 Food Product Development	3

Note: <sup>1</sup> For candidates admitted in 2004, BIOL2202 will not be offered from 2006-07.

<sup>2</sup> For candidates admitted in 2005 or 2006.

*Important! Ultimate responsibility rests with students to ensure that the required pre-requisites and co-requisite of selected courses are fulfilled. Students must take and pass all required courses in the selected major or/and minor in order to satisfy the degree graduation requirements.*

### **Major in Materials Science (for candidates admitted in 2006 or before)**

In the past few decades, we have witnessed a rapid development in technology that has had a major impact on the way we live. For example, synthetic fabrics have revolutionized the clothing industry, and the on-board computers that helped guide the Apollo 11 mission to the moon were less powerful than the personal computers that sit on the desks in every office and in many homes today. All these changes were due to the fact that new materials were developed, which was the collective effort of scientists from many different areas. Materials science is an interdisciplinary subject that involves studies of the chemical and physical properties of materials. In this Major, students will be required to

takes basic courses in chemistry and physics. The chemistry of materials synthesis (e.g. organic and inorganic materials) and their physical properties (mechanical, electrical, and optical properties) will be introduced. In the second and third years, advanced courses will focus on polymeric materials, nanomaterials, semiconducting materials, and their characterization techniques. In addition, students are required to take advanced physics and chemistry courses as electives. The Major is designed for students who are interested in materials sciences and technology for postgraduate studies.

**Minimum Entry Requirement** : 1. AL Chemistry; and  
                                   2. AL / AS Physics or AL Engineering Science; and  
                                   3. HKCEE Additional Mathematics or AS Mathematics and Statistics or AL Pure Mathematics; or equivalent

**Minimum Credit Requirement** : 72 credits  
                                   (24 credits introductory level & 48 credits advanced level courses)

**Impermissible Combination** : Nil

### **Required courses (72 credits)**

#### **1. Introductory level courses (24 credits)**

CHEM1206	General and Analytical Chemistry	6
PHYS1314	Modern Physics	6

**Plus** at least one of the following courses:

CHEM1301	Basic Inorganic Chemistry	6
CHEM1406	Basic Organic Chemistry	6

**Plus** at least one of the following courses:

PHYS1111	Introduction to Mechanics	6
PHYS1112	Electricity and Magnetism	6

#### **2. Advanced level courses (48 credits)**

CHEM2109	Introduction to Materials Chemistry	6
CHEM2507	Principles and Applications of Spectroscopic Techniques <b>OR</b>	
CHEM2510	Principles and Applications of Spectroscopic Techniques	6
CHEM3110	Advanced Materials	6
PHYS2225	Solid State Devices	6
PHYS2229	Thin Film Physics	6
PHYS2235	Physics of Nanomaterials	6

**Plus** at least one of the following courses:

PHYS2221	Introductory Solid State Physics	6
PHYS2323	Introductory Quantum Mechanics	6

**Plus** at least 6 credits of advanced level Chemistry courses (CHEM2000 or CHEM3000 level), subject to prerequisite requirements.

Note: For students having major/major, or major/minor combinations of Materials Science / Chemistry, or Materials Science / Physics, a set of replacement courses from the Departments of Chemistry and Physics will be made available so that there will be no overlap with the core courses in this major.

*Important! Ultimate responsibility rests with students to ensure that the required pre-requisites and co-requisite of selected courses are fulfilled. Students must take and pass all required courses in the selected major or/and minor in order to satisfy the degree graduation requirements.*

### **Major in Mathematics** (for candidates admitted in 2006 or before)

Mathematics has been referred to as "our invisible culture". Most people agree mathematics finds applications ranging from traditional ones in the physical sciences and engineering to more recent ones in the life sciences, economics, finance and management. Yet, many are dazzled by achievements mathematics helps to bring about that they forget about mathematics itself! A Major in Mathematics provides a solid comprehensive undergraduate education in the subject and will nurture quantitative reasoning, logical and analytical thinking, meticulous care to work, ability to conceptualize, problem-solving skill and innovative imagination.

**Minimum Entry Requirement** : AL Pure Mathematics or equivalent

**Minimum Credit Requirement** : 78 credits

(30 credits introductory level & 48 credits advanced level courses)

**Impermissible Combination** : Minor in Mathematics

#### **Required courses (78 credits)**

	<b>Credits</b>
<b>1. Introductory level courses (30 credits)</b>	
MATH1001 Fundamental Concepts of Mathematics <sup>1</sup>	OR
MATH1800 Elements of Discrete Mathematics <sup>2</sup>	6
MATH1101 Linear Algebra I	6
MATH1102 Linear Algebra II	6
MATH1201 Calculus I	6
MATH1202 Calculus II	6
<b>2. Advanced level courses (48 credits)</b>	
MATH2301 Algebra I	6
MATH2401 Analysis I	6

**Plus** at least 36 credits of advanced level Mathematics courses (MATH2000 or MATH3000 level), subject to prerequisite requirements.

Note: <sup>1</sup> For candidates admitted in 2006.

<sup>2</sup> For candidates admitted in 2004 or 2005.

*Important! Ultimate responsibility rests with students to ensure that the required pre-requisites and co-requisite of selected courses are fulfilled. Students must take and pass all required courses in the selected major or/and minor in order to satisfy the degree graduation requirements.*

### **Major in Physics** (for candidates admitted in 2006 or before)

The Major in Physics is intended for students who would like to acquire a well-rounded foundation on the subject. It covers a wide range of basic courses in theoretical and experimental physics to prepare students for future careers which require a professional knowledge in physics, such as the semiconductor industry, education, and research. A large selection of elective courses is provided for students to pursue a wide range of topics from the small scale of nanomaterials to the large scale of astrophysics.

- Minimum Entry Requirement** : 1. AL / AS Physics or AL Engineering Science; and  
2. HKCEE Additional Mathematics or AS Mathematics and Statistics or AL Pure Mathematics; or equivalent
- Minimum Credit Requirement** : 78 credits  
(30 credits introductory level & 48 credits advanced level courses)
- Impermissible Combination** : Minor in Physics

**Required courses (78 credits)**

	<b>Credits</b>
<b>1. Introductory level courses (30 credits)</b>	
PHYS1111	Introduction to Mechanics
PHYS1112	Electricity and Magnetism
PHYS1113	Heat, Light and Waves
PHYS1314	Modern Physics

**Plus** at least one of the following courses:

PHYS1411	Introductory Experimental Physics	6
PHYS1412	Electronics	6

**2. Advanced level courses (48 credits)**

PHYS2321	Introductory Electromagnetism	6
PHYS2322	Statistical Mechanics and Thermodynamics	6
PHYS2323	Introductory Quantum Mechanics	6
PHYS2324	Classical Mechanics	6

**Plus** at least 24 credits of advanced level Physics courses (PHYS2000 or PHYS3000 level) of which 12 credits must be at PHYS3000 level, subject to prerequisite requirements.

*Important! Ultimate responsibility rests with students to ensure that the required pre-requisites and co-requisite of selected courses are fulfilled. Students must take and pass all required courses in the selected major or/and minor in order to satisfy the degree graduation requirements.*

**Major in Risk Management** (for candidates admitted in 2005 or before)

The Major in Risk Management enables students to gain an intellectual understanding of both financial and investment risks. Exposure to various statistical techniques for risk modelling is provided, with specific applications to financial and insurance problems. Career opportunities are available in financial institutions and large corporations including banks and consulting firms.

- Minimum Entry Requirement** : AL Pure Mathematics or AS Mathematics and Statistics or equivalent
- Minimum Credit Requirement** : 72 credits  
(24 credits introductory level & 48 credits advanced level courses)
- Impermissible Combination** : Major in Statistics  
Minor in Risk Management;  
Statistics

### **Required courses (72 credits)**

	<b>Credits</b>
<b>1. Introductory level courses (24 credits)</b>	
STAT1301	Probability and Statistics I
STAT1302	Probability and Statistics II
STAT1303	Data Management
<b>Plus</b>	at least 6 credits from the following courses:
MATH0802	Basic Mathematics II
MATH1803	Basic Mathematics III
<b>2. Advanced level courses (48 credits)</b>	
STAT2301	Linear Statistical Analysis
STAT2303	Probability Modelling
STAT2309	The Statistics of Investment Risk
STAT2310	Risk Management and Insurance
STAT2315	Practical Mathematics for Investment
STAT3301	Time-series Analysis
STAT3305	Financial Data Analysis
STAT3308	Financial Engineering
STAT3316	Advanced Probability
STAT3317	Computational Statistics

*Important! Ultimate responsibility rests with students to ensure that the required pre-requisites and co-requisite of selected courses are fulfilled. Students must take and pass all required courses in the selected major or/and minor in order to satisfy the degree graduation requirements.*

### **Major in Risk Management (for candidates admitted in 2006)**

The Major in Risk Management enables students to gain an intellectual understanding of both financial and investment risks. Exposure to various statistical techniques for risk modelling is provided, with specific applications to financial and insurance problems. Career opportunities are available in financial institutions and large corporations including banks and consulting firms.

<b>Minimum Entry Requirement</b>	: AL Pure Mathematics or AS Mathematics and Statistics or equivalent
<b>Minimum Credit Requirement</b>	: 72 credits (24 credits introductory level & 48 credits advanced level courses)
<b>Impermissible Combination</b>	: Major in Statistics Minor in Risk Management; Statistics

### **Required courses (72 credits)**

	<b>Credits</b>
<b>1. Introductory level courses (24 credits)</b>	
STAT1301	Probability and Statistics I
STAT1302	Probability and Statistics II
STAT1303	Data Management

**Plus** at least 6 credits from the following courses:

MATH0802	Basic Mathematics II	6
MATH1803	Basic Mathematics III	6
STAT1304	The Analysis of Sample Surveys <sup>1</sup>	6
STAT1305	Introduction to Demography <sup>1</sup>	6

## 2. Advanced level courses (48 credits)

STAT2301	Linear Statistical Analysis	6
STAT2309	The Statistics of Investment Risk	6
STAT2310	Risk Management and Insurance	6
STAT3301	Time-series Analysis	6

**Plus** at least 24 credits from the following courses:

STAT2303	Probability Modelling	6
STAT2315	Practical Mathematics for Investment	6
STAT2806	Financial Economics	6
STAT3305	Financial Data Analysis	6
STAT3308	Financial Engineering	6
STAT3316	Advanced Probability	6
STAT3317	Computational Statistics	6
STAT3812	Stochastic Calculus with Financial Applications	6

Note: <sup>1</sup> Only for students majoring in Mathematics.

*Important! Ultimate responsibility rests with students to ensure that the required pre-requisites and co-requisite of selected courses are fulfilled. Students must take and pass all required courses in the selected major or/and minor in order to satisfy the degree graduation requirements.*

## Major in Statistics (for candidates admitted in 2006 or before)

The Major in Statistics equips students with powerful mathematical, analytic and computational skills, which are in great demand in many practical areas. It establishes for students a strong background in statistical concepts, and aims to provide a broad and solid training in applied statistical methodologies. Career opportunities are available in business, finance, industry, computing, marketing, communications, environmental protection, health organizations, as well as in scientific and academic research.

<b>Minimum Entry Requirement</b>	:	AL Pure Mathematics or AS Mathematics and Statistics or equivalent
<b>Minimum Credit Requirement</b>	:	72 credits (24 credits introductory level & 48 credits advanced level courses)
<b>Impermissible Combination</b>	:	Major in Risk Management Minor in Risk Management; Statistics

## Required courses (72 credits)

		Credits
<b>1. Introductory level courses (24 credits)</b>		
STAT1301	Probability and Statistics I	6
STAT1302	Probability and Statistics II	6

**Plus** at least 6 credits from the following courses:

STAT1303	Data Management	6
STAT1304	The Analysis of Sample Surveys	6
STAT1305	Introduction to Demography	6

**Plus** at least 6 credits from the following courses (for students not majoring in Mathematics):

MATH0802	Basic Mathematics II	6
MATH1803	Basic Mathematics III	6

## 2. Advanced level courses (48 credits)

STAT2301	Linear Statistical Analysis	6
STAT3301	Time-series Analysis	6
STAT3302	Multivariate Data Analysis	6
STAT3304	Computer-aided Statistical Modelling	6

**Plus** at least 24 credits from Lists A and B, among which at least 12 credits from List A:

### List A:

STAT2302	Statistical Inference	6
STAT2303	Probability Modelling	6
STAT2308	Statistical Genetics	6
STAT2312	Data Mining	6
STAT2313	Marketing Engineering	6
STAT3305	Financial Data Analysis	6
STAT3306	Selected Topics in Statistics	6
STAT3307	Project in Statistics	6
STAT3308	Financial Engineering	6
STAT3316	Advanced Probability	6
STAT3317	Computational Statistics	6
STAT3811	Survival Analysis	6
STAT3812	Stochastic Calculus with Financial Applications	6

### List B:

STAT2304	Design and Analysis of Experiments	6
STAT2305	Quality Control and Management	6
STAT2306	Business Logistics	6
STAT2307	Statistics in Clinical Medicine & Bio-medical Research	6
STAT2309	The Statistics of Investment Risk	6
STAT2310	Risk Management and Insurance	6
STAT2315	Practical Mathematics for Investment	6
STAT2801	Life Contingencies	6
STAT2805	Credibility Theory and Loss Distributions	6
STAT2806	Financial Economics	6
STAT3810	Risk Theory	6

*Important! Ultimate responsibility rests with students to ensure that the required pre-requisites and co-requisite of selected courses are fulfilled. Students must take and pass all required courses in the selected major or/and minor in order to satisfy the degree graduation requirements.*

### **Minor in Actuarial Studies** (for candidates admitted in 2005 or before)

Mathematics, Physics, Statistics, Economics, Finance, and other Science majors who are taking a lot of mathematics and had very strong Advanced Level Pure Mathematics grades are suitable for choosing this Minor.

<b>Minimum Entry Requirement</b>	: AL Pure Mathematics or AS Mathematics and Statistics or equivalent
<b>Minimum Credit Requirement</b>	: 36 credits (12 credits introductory level & 24 credits advanced level courses)
<b>Impermissible Combination</b>	: Nil

### Required courses (36 credits)

#### **Credits**

##### **1. Introductory level courses (12 or 18 credits)**

STAT1301 *	Probability and Statistics I <sup>1</sup>	6
STAT1302 *	Probability and Statistics II	6
STAT1801	Probability and Statistics: Foundations of Actuarial Science	6
STAT1802	Financial Mathematics	6
STAT2303 *	Probability Modelling	6

\* Students majoring in Statistics or Risk Management should take the following **two** courses in place of the above:

STAT1305	Introduction to Demography	6
STAT2306	Business Logistics	6

##### **2. Advanced level courses (24 credits)**

At least 24 credits from the following courses:

STAT2801	Life Contingencies	6
STAT2805	Credibility Theory and Loss Distributions	6
STAT3810	Risk Theory	6
STAT3811	Survival Analysis	6
STAT3812	Stochastic Calculus with Financial Applications	6

Note: <sup>1</sup> The credits of this course would not be counted for this minor if a student also selects the Risk Management or Statistics minors. If such a situation arises, the required total credits becomes 12.

*Important! Ultimate responsibility rests with students to ensure that the required pre-requisites and co-requisite of selected courses are fulfilled. Students must take and pass all required courses in the selected major or/and minor in order to satisfy the degree graduation requirements.*

### **Minor in Actuarial Studies (for candidates admitted in 2006)**

Mathematics, Physics, Statistics, Economics, Finance, and other Science majors who are taking a lot of mathematics and had very strong Advanced Level Pure Mathematics grades are suitable for choosing this Minor.

**Minimum Entry Requirement** : AL Pure Mathematics or AS Mathematics and Statistics or equivalent

**Minimum Credit Requirement** : 36-42 credits  
(12-18 credits introductory level & 24 credits advanced level courses)

**Impermissible Combination** : Nil

### **Required courses (36 or 42 credits)**

		<b>Credits</b>
<b>1.</b>	<b>Introductory level courses (12 or 18 credits)</b>	
For students majoring in Risk Management or Statistics (12 credits)		
STAT1305	Introduction to Demography	6
STAT1802	Financial Mathematics	6
STAT2303	Probability Modelling	6
STAT2306	Business Logistics	6
For students minoring in Risk Management or Statistics (12 credits)		
STAT1302	Probability and Statistics II	6
STAT1801	Probability and Statistics: Foundations of Actuarial Science	6
STAT1802	Financial Mathematics	6
STAT2303	Probability Modelling	6
For students not belonging to the above two categories (18 credits)		
STAT1301	Probability and Statistics I	6
STAT1302	Probability and Statistics II	6
STAT1801	Probability and Statistics: Foundations of Actuarial Science	6
STAT1802	Financial Mathematics	6
STAT2303	Probability Modelling	6
<b>2.</b>	<b>Advanced level courses (24 credits)</b>	

At least 24 credits from the following courses:

STAT2801	Life Contingencies	6
STAT2805	Credibility Theory and Loss Distributions	6
STAT2806	Financial Economics	6
STAT2807	Corporate Finance for Actuarial Science	6
STAT3810	Risk Theory	6
STAT3811	Survival Analysis	6
STAT3812	Stochastic Calculus with Financial Applications	6

*Important! Ultimate responsibility rests with students to ensure that the required pre-requisites and co-requisite of selected courses are fulfilled. Students must take and pass all required courses in the selected major or/and minor in order to satisfy the degree graduation requirements.*

### **Minor in Astronomy (for candidates admitted in 2006 or before)**

Have you ever enjoyed a beautiful starry night and wondered it came to be like that? The Minor in Astronomy is intended for students who would like to acquire some appreciation of the beauties of the universe. Students are offered the opportunity to receive training in both the theoretical and practical aspect of astronomy.

**Minimum Entry Requirement** : 1. AL / AS Physics or AL Engineering Science; and  
2. HKCEE Additional Mathematics or AS Mathematics and Statistics or AL Pure Mathematics; or equivalent

**Minimum Credit Requirement** : 36 credits  
(12 credits introductory level & 24 credits advanced level courses)

**Impermissible Combination** : Nil<sup>1</sup>

\* Refer to the Physics Department website <http://www.physics.hku.hk> for suggested curriculum.

### **Required courses (36 credits)**

	<b>Credits</b>
<b>1. Introductory level courses (12 credits)</b>	
PHYS0001      Nature of the Universe I: Introduction to Observational Astronomy and the Solar System	3
PHYS0002      Nature of the Universe II: Stars, Galaxies and Cosmology for Beginners	3
<b>Plus</b> at least 6 credits of introductory level Physics course (PHYS0000 or PHYS1000 level) <sup>2</sup>	
<b>2. Advanced level courses (24 credits)</b>	
At least 24 credits of advanced level Physics courses (PHYS2000 or PHYS3000) level, out of which at least 12 credits are from the following courses:	
PHYS2021      The Physical Universe	6
PHYS2022      Observational Astronomy	6
PHYS2023      Stellar Physics	6
PHYS2024      Introduction to Cosmology	6
PHYS3031      Astrophysics	6
PHYS3033      General Relativity	6
PHYS3034      Cosmology	6

- Note: <sup>1</sup> For students having major/minor combination of Physics / Astronomy, or Materials Science / Astronomy, any single introductory or advanced level Physics course can be used to satisfy a major or minor requirement only once.
- <sup>2</sup> Students are strongly advised to take at least one of the following courses: PHYS1111, PHYS1112, and PHYS1314 to allow for maximum flexibility in selection for advanced level Physics courses.

*Important! Ultimate responsibility rests with students to ensure that the required pre-requisites and co-requisite of selected courses are fulfilled. Students must take and pass all required courses in the selected major or/and minor in order to satisfy the degree graduation requirements.*

### **Minor in Biochemistry (for candidates admitted in 2006 or before)**

Biochemistry, strengthened with molecular biology, is a field with enormous applications to our daily lives. It also is a discipline of sublime fascination. Our understanding of the biochemical bases of various life processes has greatly improved human welfare, particularly the medical and nutritional aspects. Further advances in this rapidly expanding field of knowledge, including building and establishing new conceptual frameworks, development of novel methodologies and techniques, should pave way to even more spectacular insights into nature and lead to a better control of our destiny.

The Minor in Biochemistry offered by the Department of Biochemistry is designed to provide students with both basic and advanced knowledge in modern biochemistry and molecular biology. Our goal is to develop and equip students with enough critical thinking and analytical skills so that they can embark on a career in biochemical sciences.

**Minimum Entry Requirement** : AS Biology or AS Chemistry or equivalent

**Minimum Credit Requirement** : 36 credits  
(12 credits introductory level & 24 credits advanced level courses)

**Impermissible Combination** : Major in Biochemistry

### **Required courses (36 credits)**

	<b>Credits</b>
<b>1. Introductory level courses (12 credits)</b>	
BIOC1001 Basic Biochemistry	6
BIOC1003 Introduction to Molecular Genetics	6
<b>2. Advanced level courses (24 credits)</b>	
BIOL2301 Protein Structure and Function	6
<b>Plus</b> at least 6 credits of BIOC2000 level courses and at least 12 credits of BIOC3000 level courses, subject to prerequisite requirements.	

*Important! Ultimate responsibility rests with students to ensure that the required pre-requisites and co-requisite of selected courses are fulfilled. Students must take and pass all required courses in the selected major or/and minor in order to satisfy the degree graduation requirements.*

#### **Minor in Biology** (for candidates admitted in 2006 or before)

What is biology and why is it important? This Minor provides students with a foundation in the biological sciences. Students are offered a broad range of options that should suit all interests, from genetics to microbiology, ecology to morphology and biodiversity to physiology. This is a good choice for a non-scientist who wants to know what biology is all about, as well as for non-biological scientists to explore the living side of science.

**Minimum Entry Requirement** : AL Biology or equivalent

**Minimum Credit Requirement** : 36 credits

(12 credits introductory level & 24 credits advanced level courses)

**Impermissible Combination** : Major in Biology

### **Required courses (36 credits)**

	<b>Credits</b>
<b>1. Introductory level courses (12 credits)</b>	
At least 12 credits of the following courses:	
BIOL0601 (ECOL0020) Ecology of Hong Kong	3
BIOL0603 (ECOL0040) Ecology and Evolution	3
BIOL0604 (ECOL0041) Evolutionary Diversity	6
BIOL0605 (ECOL0042) Ecology Field Course	3
BIOL1106 Genetics	3
BIOL1107 Introduction to Developmental Biology & Reproduction	3
BIOL1119 Introductory Microbiology	6
BIOL1121 Animal Form and Functions	3
BIOL1122 Functional Biology <b>OR</b>	
BIOL0126 Fundamentals of Biology	6

#### **2. Advanced level courses (24 credits)**

At least 12 credits of the following courses:

BIOL2112 Plant Physiology <b>OR</b>	
BIOL2215 Animal Physiology	6

BIOL2115	Cell Biology & Cell Technology	6
BIOL2303	Introduction to Molecular Biology	6
BIOL2606 (ECOL2004)	Environmental Microbiology <sup>1</sup> <b>OR</b>	
ECOL2022	Biodiversity <sup>2</sup>	6

**Plus** at least 12 credits of advanced level courses (BIOL2000, BIOL3000, ECOL2000 or ECOL3000 level) of which 6 credits at BIOL3000 or ECOL3000 level, subject to prerequisite requirements.

Note: <sup>1</sup> For candidates admitted in 2005 or 2006.

<sup>2</sup> For candidates admitted in 2004.

*Important! Ultimate responsibility rests with students to ensure that the required pre-requisites and co-requisite of selected courses are fulfilled. Students must take and pass all required courses in the selected major or/and minor in order to satisfy the degree graduation requirements.*

### **Minor in Biotechnology** (for candidates admitted in 2006 or before)

Technology leads our future. Biotechnology is relevant to many business sectors and our daily life. Students who are interested in the developments of biological sciences are highly recommended to take this Minor. You will learn the scientific principles underlying current biotechnological advances and will become literate in biotechnology business and advancements.

**Minimum Entry Requirement** : AL Biology or equivalent

**Minimum Credit Requirement** : 36 credits  
(12 credits introductory level & 24 credits advanced level courses)

**Impermissible Combination** : Major in Biotechnology

#### **Required courses (36 credits)**

		<b>Credits</b>
<b>1. Introductory level courses (12 credits)</b>		
BIOL1122	Functional Biology	6
<b>Plus</b>	at least 6 credits of the following courses:	
BIOC1001	Basic Biochemistry <b>OR</b>	
BIOL1125	Introduction to Biochemistry	6
BIOL0128	Biological Techniques, Instrumentation and Data Processing	6
BIOL1106	Genetics	3
BIOL1107	Introduction to Developmental Biology & Reproduction	3
BIOL1119	Introductory Microbiology	6

#### **2. Advanced level courses (24 credits)**

BIOL2303	Introduction to Molecular Biology	6
----------	-----------------------------------	---

**Plus** at least 6 credits of the following courses:

BIOL3315	Animal Biotechnology	6
BIOL3316	Plant Biotechnology	6
BIOL3317	Microbial Biotechnology	6

**Plus** at least 12 credits of the following courses:

BIOL2004	Bioexploitation of Filamentous Fungi	3
BIOL2111	Molecular Microbiology	6
BIOL2115	Cell Biology & Cell Technology	6
BIOL2205	Basic Immunology	6
BIOL2209	Developmental Biology	6
BIOL2301	Protein Structure and Function	6
BIOL2302	Fermentation Technology	6
BIOL2515	Food Microbiology	6
BIOL3213	Advanced Techniques and Instrumentation in Animal Biology	6
BIOL3214	General Virology	6
BIOL3307	Biotechnology Industry	6
BIOL3522	Nutrigenomics	3

*Important! Ultimate responsibility rests with students to ensure that the required pre-requisites and co-requisite of selected courses are fulfilled. Students must take and pass all required courses in the selected major or/and minor in order to satisfy the degree graduation requirements.*

### **Minor in Chemistry** (for candidates admitted in 2006 or before)

Why study Chemistry? Chemistry is both interesting and important. It is involved in almost everything you do. Chemistry occupies a central role in the natural sciences, it overlaps with other fields, and provides a fruitful source for important discoveries. For example, new discoveries in material sciences such as nanoscale materials cannot be realized without chemists. Astronomers now use results from chemical laboratories to search for new compounds in distant galaxies. Geologists analyse the structures of minerals and transformations between different forms of matter in the Earth's crust by using chemical principles of bonding and thermodynamics. Biologists try to understand the life process by chemical language in the field like molecular biology and chemical genetics. Therefore, the Chemistry Department offers this Minor for those students who need a knowledge of chemistry for their major subjects or those who have an interest in studying chemistry at a higher level. Students are required to take introductory courses in general and analytical chemistry and one other chemistry course from selected areas. The advanced courses emphasize instrumental analysis and spectroscopic techniques. In addition, students may also choose specialized courses in different areas of chemistry such as organic, synthetic, materials, medicinal, environmental, or industrial chemistry as their electives in the second and third years. The Minor is essential to students who major in science-related subjects such as the biological, medical, material and environmental sciences.

**Minimum Entry Requirement** : AL Chemistry or equivalent

**Minimum Credit Requirement** : 36 credits

(12 credits introductory level & 24 credits advanced level courses)

## **Impermissible Combination : Major in Chemistry**

### **Required courses (36 credits)**

1. Introductory level courses (12 credits)		Credits
CHEM1206	General and Analytical Chemistry	6
<b>Plus</b> at least one of the following courses:		
CHEM1001	Chemical Principles for Earth and Life Sciences	6
CHEM1301	Basic Inorganic Chemistry	6
CHEM1401	Fundamentals of Organic Chemistry <sup>1</sup>	6
CHEM1406	Basic Organic Chemistry <sup>1</sup>	6
CHEM1506	Basic Physical Chemistry	6

## 2. Advanced level courses (24 credits)

**Any** 24 credits of advanced level Chemistry courses (CHEM2000 or CHEM3000 level), subject to prerequisite requirements.

Note: <sup>1</sup> CHEM1401 and CHEM1406 are mutually exclusive.

*Important! Ultimate responsibility rests with students to ensure that the required pre-requisites and co-requisite of selected courses are fulfilled. Students must take and pass all required courses in the selected major or/and minor in order to satisfy the degree graduation requirements.*

### Minor in Earth Sciences (for candidates admitted in 2006 or before)

To provide interested students an introduction to the different aspects of the discipline which may or may not be relevant to their major field of interest. Courses in physical geology and Earth history are offered in the first year followed by more advanced courses in the second and third year. A wide range of Earth Science courses are offered. A Minor in Earth Sciences is particularly suitable for students majoring in biochemistry, botany, chemistry, computing, ecology, economics, geography, mathematics, statistics, physics and zoology.

**Minimum Entry Requirement** : Nil

**Minimum Credit Requirement** : 36 credits  
(12 credits introductory level & 24 credits advanced level courses)

**Impermissible Combination** : Major in Earth Sciences

#### Required courses (36 credits)

	Credits
<b>1. Introductory level courses (12 credits)</b>	
EASC0116                  Introduction to Physical Geology	6
<b>Plus</b> at least one of the following courses:	
EASC0001                  Earth's Past and Future	6
EASC0105                  Earth Through Time	6
<b>2. Advanced level courses (24 credits)</b>	

**Any** 24 credits of advanced level Earth Sciences courses (EASC2000 or EASC3000 level), subject to prerequisite requirements.

*Important! Ultimate responsibility rests with students to ensure that the required pre-requisites and co-requisite of selected courses are fulfilled. Students must take and pass all required courses in the selected major or/and minor in order to satisfy the degree graduation requirements.*

### Minor in Ecology & Biodiversity (for candidates admitted in 2006 or before)

Southeast Asia is extremely diverse in plants and animals, and Hong Kong has, for its size, a remarkable biodiversity. This Minor is an ideal introduction to the natural world, the species and ecosystems it comprises and the biological rules it follows. Students will first learn about general ecological principles and the local flora and fauna of the region. They will then be able to build upon this basic knowledge by selecting from among a wide range of courses that offer learning opportunities through practical and field work, traditional and virtual teaching, in more specialized areas of ecology and biodiversity.

<b>Minimum Entry Requirement</b>	: Nil
<b>Minimum Credit Requirement</b>	: 36 credits (12 credits introductory level & 24 credits advanced level courses)
<b>Impermissible Combination</b>	: Major in Ecology & Biodiversity; Environmental Protection Minor in Environmental Protection

### Required courses (36 credits)

	<b>Credits</b>
<b>1. Introductory level courses (12 credits)</b>	
BIOL0601 (ECOL0020)      Ecology of Hong Kong	3
BIOL0603 (ECOL0040)      Ecology and Evolution	3
BIOL0604 (ECOL0041)      Evolutionary Diversity	6
The following is also recommended:	
BIOL0605 (ECOL0042)      Ecology Field Course	3
<b>2. Advanced level courses (24 credits)</b>	

**Plus** at least 24 credits of the following courses:

BIOL2606 (ECOL2004)	Environmental Microbiology	6
BIOL2607 (ECOL2005)	Fish Biology	6
BIOL2609 (ECOL2007)	Molecular Ecology	6
BIOL2610 (ECOL2011)	Biological Oceanography	6
BIOL2611 (ECOL2013)	Systematics & Phylogenetics	6
BIOL2612 (ECOL2014)	Conservation Biology	6
BIOL2613 (ECOL2015)	Fungal Diversity	3
BIOL2615 (ECOL2023)	Freshwater Ecology	6
BIOL2616 (ECOL2024)	Plant Structure and Evolution	3
BIOL2618 (ECOL2029)	How Humans Evolved	6
BIOL2619 (ECOL2032)	Terrestrial Ecology	6
ECOL2022	Biodiversity *	6
ECOL3033	Biogeography *	3

Note: \* Not offered from 2006.

*Important! Ultimate responsibility rests with students to ensure that the required pre-requisites and co-requisite of selected courses are fulfilled. Students must take and pass all required courses in the selected major or/and minor in order to satisfy the degree graduation requirements.*

### **Minor in Environmental Protection** (for candidates admitted in 2006 or before)

Managing and conserving the environment is increasingly recognized as an important and necessary challenge for modern Society. Preserving biological diversity, whether species, genes, populations or ecosystems, requires an understanding of a range of exciting new areas in the life sciences. This Minor will provide students with an appreciation of the depth and breadth of this important developing field. The lectures are enhanced by valuable laboratory and practical experience that should be applicable to a wide range of careers, and contribute to a better understanding of the world we live in.

<b>Minimum Entry Requirement</b>	: AL Biology or equivalent
<b>Minimum Credit Requirement</b>	: 36 credits (12 credits introductory level & 24 credits advanced level courses)

<b>Impermissible Combination</b>	: Major in Ecology & Biodiversity; Environmental Protection Minor in Ecology & Biodiversity
----------------------------------	---

**Required courses (36 credits)**

	<b>Credits</b>
<b>1. Introductory level courses (12 credits)</b>	
BIOL0601 (ECOL0020)      Ecology of Hong Kong	3
BIOL0603 (ECOL0040)      Ecology and Evolution	3
BIOL0604 (ECOL0041)      Evolutionary Diversity	6

The following is also recommended:

BIOL0605 (ECOL0042)      Ecology Field Course	3
---	---

**2. Advanced level courses (24 credits)**

BIOL3622 (ECOL3027)      Environmental Impact Assessment	6
BIOL3624 (ECOL3034)      Environmental Monitoring and Remediation Techniques	6

**Plus** at least 12 credits of the following courses:

BIOL2606 (ECOL2004)      Environmental Microbiology	6
BIOL2608 (ECOL2006)      Biometrics	6
BIOL2612 (ECOL2014)      Conservation Biology	6
BIOL2614 (ECOL2016)      Environmental Toxicology	6
BIOL2619 (ECOL2032)      Terrestrial Ecology <sup>1</sup> <b>OR</b> ECOL2022 Biodiversity <sup>2</sup>	6

Note: <sup>1</sup> For candidates admitted in 2005 or 2006.

<sup>2</sup> For candidates admitted in 2004.

*Important! Ultimate responsibility rests with students to ensure that the required pre-requisites and co-requisite of selected courses are fulfilled. Students must take and pass all required courses in the selected major or/and minor in order to satisfy the degree graduation requirements.*

**Minor in Food & Nutritional Science** (for candidates admitted in 2006 or before)

This Minor is ideal for those who simply want to learn more about diet as part of their quest to promote personal health or for those who see knowledge in food and nutrition as complementary to their major study, be it biotechnology, chemistry, business or social science.

<b>Minimum Entry Requirement</b>	: AL / AS Biology* and AL / AS Chemistry or equivalent
<b>Minimum Credit Requirement</b>	: 36 credits (12 credits introductory level & 24 credits advanced level courses)
<b>Impermissible Combination</b>	: Major in Food & Nutritional Science

\* Students without AL / AS Biology must take BIOL0126 Fundamentals of Biology as a qualifying course.

**Required courses (36 credits)**

	Credits
<b>1. Introductory level courses (12 credits)</b>	
BIOL0002	3
BIOL1123	3
BIOL1514	6
<b>2. Advanced level courses (24 credits)</b>	
At least 24 credits of the following courses:	
BIOL2004	3
BIOL2215	6
BIOL2302	6
BIOL2501	6
BIOL2503	6
BIOL2505	6
BIOL2507	6
BIOL2515	6
BIOL2517	3
BIOL2519	6
BIOL2520	3
BIOL2521	3
BIOL3516	3
BIOL3522	3
BIOL3523	3
BIOL3524	3
BIOL3525	3
Bioexploitation of Filamentous Fungi	3
Animal Physiology	6
Fermentation Technology	6
Food Processing and Preservation	6
Grain Production & Utilization	6
Food Safety and Quality Management	6
Meat and Dairy Science	6
Food Microbiology	6
Food Analysis	3
Essential Nutrients & Functional Foods	6
Food Toxicology	3
Food Engineering	3
Nutrition and Brain Function	3
Nutrigenomics	3
Principles of Chinese Medicated Diet	3
Diet and Disease	3
Food Product Development	3

*Important! Ultimate responsibility rests with students to ensure that the required pre-requisites and co-requisite of selected courses are fulfilled. Students must take and pass all required courses in the selected major or/and minor in order to satisfy the degree graduation requirements.*

**Minor in General Science** (for candidates admitted in 2006 or before)

Science is an indispensable component of this modern world, with a significant impact to our daily lives. Be it the interaction between animals and their natural environment, the food in our daily diet, the synthesis of new materials (nanomaterials, polymeric and semiconducting materials), the mystery of the human gene, or the application of mathematics to solve problems. This Minor is suitable for non-Science students who are interested in exploring science and learning how scientists study the real world. The scientific knowledge, quantitative reasoning, logical and analytical thinking and sense of numeracy will be useful in various fields of finance, business, social sciences, arts and education. Students have the flexibility to gather courses in any area of interest.

**Minimum Entry Requirement** : Nil

**Minimum Credit Requirement** : 36 credits

(12 credits introductory level & 24 credits advanced level courses)

**Impermissible Combination** : Nil

(This Minor is only offered to non-Faculty of Science students.)

### **Required courses (36 credits)**

**Credits**

- 1. Introductory level courses (12 credits)**

At least 12 credits of any introductory level Science courses (level 0 & 1), subject to prerequisite requirements.
- 2. Advanced level courses (24 credits)**

At least 24 credits of any advanced level Science courses (level 2 & 3), subject to prerequisite requirements.

*Important! Ultimate responsibility rests with students to ensure that the required pre-requisites and co-requisite of selected courses are fulfilled. Students must take and pass all required courses in the selected major or/and minor in order to satisfy the degree graduation requirements.*

### **Minor in Mathematics** (for candidates admitted in 2006 or before)

Mathematics has been referred to as "our invisible culture". Most people agree mathematics finds applications ranging from traditional ones in the physical sciences and engineering to more recent ones in the life sciences, economics, finance and management. Yet, many are dazzled by achievements mathematics helps to bring about that they forget about mathematics itself! A Minor in Mathematics provides an initiation into the subject and will nurture quantitative reasoning, logical and analytical thinking, meticulous care to work, ability to conceptualize, problem-solving skill and innovative imagination.

<b>Minimum Entry Requirement</b>	: HKCEE Mathematics or AL Pure Mathematics or AS Mathematics and Statistics or equivalent
<b>Minimum Credit Requirement</b>	: 36 credits (12 credits introductory level & 24 credits advanced level courses)
<b>Impermissible Combination</b>	: Major in Mathematics

### **Required courses (36 credits)**

Credits

## 1. Introductory level courses (12 credits)

**Either**

MATH0801	Basic Mathematics I	6
MATH0802	Basic Mathematics II	6

**Or**

MATH1803	Basic Mathematics III	6
----------	-----------------------	---

Plus at least 6 credits of Mathematics course

**Or**

MATH1811	Mathematics I	6
----------	---------------	---

MATH1812	Mathematics II	6
----------	----------------	---

**Or**

MATH1813	Mathematical Methods for Actuarial Science	6
----------	--	---

Plus at least 6 credits of Mathematics course

**Or**

MATH1201	Calculus I <sup>1</sup>	6
----------	-------------------------	---

MATH1202	Calculus II <sup>1</sup>	6
----------	--------------------------	---

## 2. Advanced level courses (24 credits)

**Any** 24 credits of advanced level Mathematics courses (MATH2000 or MATH3000 level), subject to prerequisite requirements.

Note: <sup>1</sup> Students selecting this option are strongly advised to take also MATH1101 and MATH1102.

*Important! Ultimate responsibility rests with students to ensure that the required pre-requisites and co-requisite of selected courses are fulfilled. Students must take and pass all required courses in the selected major or/and minor in order to satisfy the degree graduation requirements.*

### Minor in Physics (for candidates admitted in 2006 or before)

The Minor in Physics is intended for students who would like to acquire a taste of the subject. The curriculum is designed with the flexibility for students with and without HKAL Physics/Pure Mathematics background. A large selection of elective courses is provided for students to pursue a wide range of topics from the small scale of nanomaterials to the large scale of astrophysics.

**Minimum Entry Requirement** : 1. AL / AS Physics or AL Engineering Science; and  
2. HKCEE Additional Mathematics or AS Mathematics and Statistics or AL Pure Mathematics; or equivalent

**Minimum Credit Requirement** : 36 credits  
(12 credits introductory level & 24 credits advanced level courses)

**Impermissible Combination** : Major in Physics

\* Refer to the Physics Department website <http://www.physics.hku.hk> for suggested curriculum.

### Required courses (36 credits)

	Credits
<b>1. Introductory level courses (12 credits)</b>	
PHYS1314                    Modern Physics	6

**Plus** at least 6 credits of introductory level Physics course (PHYS0000 or PHYS1000 level)<sup>1</sup>

### 2. Advanced level courses (24 credits)

**Any** 24 credits of advanced level Physics courses (PHYS2000 or PHYS3000 level), subject to prerequisite requirements.

Note: <sup>1</sup> Students are strongly advised to take at least one of the following courses: PHYS1111, PHYS1112 and PHYS1113 to allow for maximum flexibility in course selection for advanced level Physics courses.

*Important! Ultimate responsibility rests with students to ensure that the required pre-requisites and co-requisite of selected courses are fulfilled. Students must take and pass all required courses in the selected major or/and minor in order to satisfy the degree graduation requirements.*

### Minor in Risk Management (for candidates admitted in 2006 or before)

The Minor in Risk Management enables students to gain exposure to financial and investment risks, and to various statistical techniques for modeling them. Specific attention is given to applications in financial and insurance problems.

<b>Minimum Entry Requirement</b>	: Nil
<b>Minimum Credit Requirement</b>	: 36 credits (12 credits introductory level & 24 credits advanced level courses)
<b>Impermissible Combination</b>	: Major in Risk Management; Statistics Minor in Statistics

### **Required courses (36 credits)**

	<b>Credits</b>
<b>1. Introductory level courses (12 credits)</b>	
STAT1301	Probability and Statistics I
<b>Or</b>	
STAT1306	Introductory Statistics
<b>Or</b>	
STAT0302	Business Statistics
<b>Plus</b>	
STAT1302	Probability and Statistics II
<b>Or</b>	
STAT1303	Data Management
<b>Or</b>	
One of the advanced level courses listed below	6

### **2. Advanced level courses (24 credits)**

At least 24 credits from the following courses:

STAT2309	The Statistics of Investment Risk	6
STAT2310	Risk Management and Insurance	6
STAT2311	Computer-aided Data Analysis	6
STAT2312	Data Mining	6
STAT2314	Business Forecasting	6
STAT2315	Practical Mathematics for Investment	6
STAT2806	Financial Economics	6
STAT3301	Time-series Analysis	6
STAT3305	Financial Data Analysis	6
STAT3308	Financial Engineering	6
STAT3812	Stochastic Calculus with Financial Applications	6

*Important! Ultimate responsibility rests with students to ensure that the required pre-requisites and co-requisite of selected courses are fulfilled. Students must take and pass all required courses in the selected major or/and minor in order to satisfy the degree graduation requirements.*

### **Minor in Statistics (for candidates admitted in 2006 or before)**

The Minor in Statistics introduces to students important statistical concepts and provides them with exposure to applied statistical methodologies. A broad spectrum of courses is available for selection, covering topics which find applications in areas like business, finance, risk management, survey research, insurance, industry, medicine or computing.

<b>Minimum Entry Requirement</b>	: Nil
<b>Minimum Credit Requirement</b>	: 36 credits (12 credits introductory level & 24 credits advanced level courses)

**Impermissible Combination** : Major in Risk Management;  
 Statistics  
 Minor in Risk Management

**Required courses (36 credits)**

	<b>Credits</b>
<b>1. Introductory level courses (12 credits)</b>	
One of the following courses:	
STAT0301 Elementary Statistical Methods	6
STAT1301 Probability and Statistics I	6
STAT1306 Introductory Statistics	6
<b>Plus</b> at least 6 credits from the following courses:	
STAT1302 Probability and Statistics II	6
STAT1303 Data Management	6
STAT1304 The Analysis of Sample Surveys	6
<b>2. Advanced level courses (24 credits)</b>	
At least 24 credits from the following courses:	
STAT2301 Linear Statistical Analysis	6
STAT2302 Statistical Inference	6
STAT2303 Probability Modelling	6
STAT2304 Design and Analysis of Experiments	6
STAT2305 Quality Control and Management	6
STAT2306 Business Logistics	6
STAT2307 Statistics in Clinical Medicine & Bio-medical Research	6
STAT2308 Statistical Genetics	6
STAT2309 The Statistics of Investment Risk	6
STAT2310 Risk Management and Insurance	6
STAT2311 Computer-aided Data Analysis	6
STAT2312 Data Mining	6
STAT2313 Marketing Engineering	6
STAT2314 Business Forecasting	6
STAT2315 Practical Mathematics for Investment	6
STAT2806 Financial Economics	6
STAT3301 Time-series Analysis	6
STAT3302 Multivariate Data Analysis	6
STAT3304 Computer-aided Statistical Modelling	6
STAT3305 Financial Data Analysis	6
STAT3306 Selected Topics in Statistics	6
STAT3308 Financial Engineering	6
STAT3316 Advanced Probability	6
STAT3317 Computational Statistics	6
STAT3811 Survival Analysis	6
STAT3812 Stochastic Calculus with Financial Applications	6

*Important! Ultimate responsibility rests with students to ensure that the required pre-requisites and co-requisite of selected courses are fulfilled. Students must take and pass all required courses in the selected major or/and minor in order to satisfy the degree graduation requirements.*

***For candidates admitted in or after 2007-2008***

**Major in Biochemistry** (for candidates admitted in 2007 or thereafter)

Biochemistry, strengthened with molecular biology, is a field with enormous applications to our daily lives. It also is a discipline of sublime fascination. Our understanding of the biochemical bases of various life processes has greatly improved human welfare, particularly the medical and nutritional aspects. Further advances in this rapidly expanding field of knowledge, including building and establishing new conceptual frameworks, development of novel methodologies and techniques, should pave way to even more spectacular insights into nature and lead to a better control of our destiny.

The Major in Biochemistry offered by the Department of Biochemistry is designed to provide students with both basic and advanced knowledge in modern biochemistry and molecular biology. Our goal is to develop and equip students with enough critical thinking and analytical skills so that they can embark on a career in biochemical sciences.

**Minimum Entry Requirement** : AL Chemistry or a pass in CHEM0004 Fundamental Chemistry or equivalent

**Minimum Credit Requirement** : 72 credits (18 credits introductory level, 54 credits advanced level courses including capstone requirement)

**Impermissible Combination** : Minor in Biochemistry

**Required courses (72 credits)**

	<b>Credits</b>
<b>1. Introductory level courses (18 credits)</b>	
BIOC1001 Basic Biochemistry	6
BIOC1003 Introduction to Molecular Genetics	6
CHEM1406 Basic Organic Chemistry	6
<b>2. Advanced level courses (48 credits)</b>	
BIOC2601 Metabolism	6
BIOC2603 Principles of Molecular Genetics	6
BIOC2604 Essential Techniques in Biochemistry and Molecular Biology	6
BIOC3610 Advanced Biochemistry I	6
BIOC3611 Advanced Biochemistry II	6
BIOC3613 Molecular Biology of the Gene	6
BIOC3615 Advanced Techniques in Biochemistry & Molecular Biology	6
BIOL2301 Protein Structure and Function	6

**3. Capstone requirement (6 credits) \***

Students must take at least one of the following forms of extra-ordinary learning experience to fulfill the capstone requirement:

- BIOC2616 Directed Studies in Biochemistry 6
- BIOC3614 Biochemistry Project 12
- Internship within and/or outside the Department of Biochemistry (non-credit bearing)
- Professional training programmes by biotechnology companies in Hong Kong (non-credit bearing)
- Exchange programme (1 semester or 1 year) (non-credit bearing)
- Any other activities determined by the Department to conform to the spirit of capstone experience (non-credit bearing)

\* If the extra-ordinary learning experience is fulfilled by non-credit bearing activities, students must take an additional 6-credit advanced level biochemistry course (BIOC2000 or BIOC3000 level)

*Important! Ultimate responsibility rests with students to ensure that the required pre-requisites and co-requisite of selected courses are fulfilled. Students must take and pass all required courses in the selected major or/and minor in order to satisfy the degree graduation requirements.*

### **Major in Biology** (for candidates admitted in 2007 or thereafter)

Biology has developed into a broad and diverse field of study. This Major provides students with a solid foundation in key biological subject areas, and then allows freedom to choose from a wide variety of interesting courses in year two and three. Students may select courses on molecular, physiological or organism biology, plus applied aspects such as biotechnology, conservation, food science and environmental protection.

- Minimum Entry Requirement** : AL Biology or equivalent or a pass in BIOL0126 Fundamentals of Biology
- Minimum Credit Requirement** : 72 credits (18 credits introductory level, 54 credits advanced level courses including capstone requirement)
- Impermissible Combination** : Major in Biotechnology;  
Ecology & Biodiversity;  
Environmental Protection;  
Food & Nutritional Science  
Microbiology (from 2008)  
Minor in Biology

#### **Required courses (72 credits)**

	<b>Credits</b>
<b>1. Introductory level courses (18 credits)</b>	
BIOL1122 Functional Biology	6

**Plus** at least 12 credits from the following courses:

BIOL0129 (BIOL1119)	Introductory Microbiology	3
BIOL0603 (ECOL0040)	Ecology and Evolution	3
BIOL0604 (ECOL0041)	Evolutionary Diversity	6
BIOL1106	Genetics	3

(students are strongly recommended to take “BIOC1001 Basic Biochemistry or BIOL1125 introduction to Biochemistry” as an elective)

#### **2. Advanced level courses (48 credits)**

BIOL2303 Introduction to Molecular Biology	6
--	---

**Plus** 42 credits of BIOL2000 or 3000 level course, with at least 18 credits at 3000 level

#### **3. Capstone requirement (6 credits) \***

Students must take at least one of the following forms of extra-ordinary learning experience to fulfill the capstone requirement:

- BIOL2318	Biological Sciences Field Course	6
- BIOL2319	Biological Sciences Internship	6
- BIOL2320	Directed Studies in Biological Sciences	6
- BIOL3321	Biological Sciences Project	12

- Site visits to Mainland/overseas universities, research centres, non-profit organizations or (non-credit bearing) industries in summer
- Exchange programme (1 semester or 1 year) (non-credit bearing)
- Any other activities determined by the Department to conform to the spirit of capstone experience (non-credit bearing)

\* If the extra-ordinary learning experience is fulfilled by non-credit bearing activities, students must take an additional 6-credit advanced level biological sciences course (BIOL2000 or BIOL3000 level)

*Important! Ultimate responsibility rests with students to ensure that the required pre-requisites and co-requisite of selected courses are fulfilled. Students must take and pass all required courses in the selected major or/and minor in order to satisfy the degree graduation requirements.*

### **Major in Biotechnology (for candidates admitted in 2007 or thereafter)**

As the 21<sup>st</sup> Century opens, advances in biotechnology are accelerating at a remarkable pace. There are many exciting discoveries that have improved modern society, in terms of health, nature and economic development. This Major will first equip you with a solid background in molecular biology, microbiology, biochemistry and cell biology. Based on your interests, you will then further acquire knowledge in the specialized fields of medicine, diagnostics, agriculture, aquaculture, etc, from the advanced courses. Employment opportunities in various sectors of industry and Government, including R&D, manufacturing, sales, and customer service, are available to our students.

<b>Minimum Entry Requirement</b>	: AL Biology or equivalent or a pass in BIOL0126 Fundamentals of Biology
<b>Minimum Credit Requirement</b>	: 72 credits (18 credits introductory level, 54 credits advanced level courses including capstone requirement)
<b>Impermissible Combination</b>	: Major in Biology; Food & Nutritional Science Minor in Biotechnology

#### **Required courses (72 credits)**

		<b>Credits</b>
<b>1. Introductory level courses (18 credits)</b>		

BIOL1122	Functional Biology	6
BIOC1001	Basic Biochemistry <b>OR</b>	6
BIOL1125	Introduction to Biochemistry	6
BIOL0129 (BIOL1119)	Introductory Microbiology	3
BIOL1106	Genetics	3

#### **2. Advanced level courses (48 credits)**

BIOL2115	Cell Biology & Cell Technology	6
BIOL2301	Protein Structure and Function	6
BIOL2303	Introduction to Molecular Biology	6
BIOL3315	Animal Biotechnology	6
BIOL3316	Plant Biotechnology	6
BIOL3317	Microbial Biotechnology	6

**Plus** at least 12 credits from the following courses:

BIOL2004	Bioexploitation of Filamentous Fungi	3
BIOL2111	Molecular Microbiology	6
BIOL2112	Plant Physiology	6
BIOL2114	Plant Biochemistry and Molecular Biology	6
BIOL2116	Genetics I	6
BIOL2203	Reproduction & Reproductive Biotechnology	6
BIOL2205	Basic Immunology	6
BIOL2207	Endocrinology	6
BIOL2209	Developmental Biology	6
BIOL2215	Animal Physiology	6
BIOL2217	General Parasitology	3
BIOL2302	Fermentation Technology	6
BIOL2515	Food Microbiology	6
BIOL3212	Applied Immunology	6
BIOL3214	General Virology	6
BIOL3307	Biotechnology Industry	6
BIOL3522	Nutrigenomics	3

### 3. Capstone requirement (6 credits) \*

Students must take at least one of the following forms of extra-ordinary learning experience to fulfill the capstone requirement:

- BIOL2318 Biological Sciences Field Course 6
- BIOL2319 Biological Sciences Internship 6
- BIOL2320 Directed Studies in Biological Sciences 6
- BIOL3321 Biological Sciences Project 12
  
- Site visits to Mainland/overseas universities, research centres, non-profit organizations or (non-credit bearing) industries in summer
- Exchange programme (1 semester or 1 year) (non-credit bearing)
- Any other activities determined by the Department to conform to the spirit of capstone experience (non-credit bearing)

\* If the extra-ordinary learning experience is fulfilled by non-credit bearing activities, students must take an additional 6-credit advanced level biological sciences course (BIOL2000 or BIOL3000 level)

*Important! Ultimate responsibility rests with students to ensure that the required pre-requisites and co-requisite of selected courses are fulfilled. Students must take and pass all required courses in the selected major or/and minor in order to satisfy the degree graduation requirements.*

### Major in Chemistry (for candidates admitted in 2007 or thereafter)

The dictionary defines chemistry as “the scientific study of the structure of substances, how they react when combined or in contact with one another, and how they behave under different conditions”. How chemists actually do this to investigate the properties and reactions of matter vary widely and are constantly undergoing change as new methods are discovered, new equipment is invented, and new techniques are developed. Chemistry is a central science, which interacts with many other disciplines. The aim of this Major is to provide students with a solid training in the basic areas of chemistry such as physical, inorganic, organic, applied and analytical chemistry. Through a variety of training, the Major can equip students with skills and experience in both theoretical and experimental investigations that are very important for their future career goals in the hi-tech and knowledge-based economy.

**Minimum Entry Requirement :** AL Chemistry or equivalent or a pass in CHEM0004 Fundamental Chemistry

**Minimum Credit Requirement :** 72 credits (18 credits introductory level, 54 credits advanced level courses including capstone requirement)

**Impermissible Combination :** Minor in Chemistry

### Required courses (72 credits)

	Credits
<b>1. Introductory level courses (18 credits)</b>	
CHEM1002 Chemistry: Principles and Concepts	6
CHEM1003 Chemistry: The Molecular World	6
CHEM1004 Chemistry: An Experimental Science I	6
<b>2. Advanced level courses (48 credits)</b>	
CHEM2202 Chemical Instrumentation	6
CHEM2302 Intermediate Inorganic Chemistry	9
CHEM2402 Intermediate Organic Chemistry	9
CHEM2503 Intermediate Physical Chemistry	9
CHEM2510 (CHEM2507) Principles and Applications of Spectroscopic and Analytical Techniques	6

**Plus** at least 9 credits of advanced level Chemistry courses (CHEM2000 or CHEM3000 level) of which 6 credits must be at CHEM3000 level, subject to prerequisite requirements.<sup>1</sup>

### **3. Capstone requirement (6 credits) \***

Students must take at least one of the following forms of extra-ordinary learning experience to fulfill the capstone requirement:

- CHEM2111 Directed Studies in Chemistry 6
- CHEM3105 Chemistry Project 12
- Summer Research Chemistry Project (non-credit bearing)
- Summer Chemistry Internship (non-credit bearing)
- Exchange programme (1 semester or 1 year) (non-credit bearing)
- Any other activities determined by the Department to conform to the spirit of capstone experience (non-credit bearing)

\* If the extra-ordinary learning experience is fulfilled by non-credit bearing activities, students must take an additional 6-credit advanced level chemistry course (CHEM2000 or CHEM3000 level)

Note: <sup>1</sup> Students who wish to specialize in a certain area are recommended to choose courses from the following lists.

- (a) For students who are interested in Analytical Chemistry: CHEM2102, CHEM2207, CHEM3203, CHEM3204.
- (b) For students who are interested in Applied Chemistry: CHEM2103, CHEM3107, CHEM3110, CHEM3204.
- (c) For students who are interested in Medicinal Chemistry: CHEM3403, CHEM3404, CHEM3405, CHEM3407.
- (d) For students who are interested in Pure Chemistry: CHEM3106, CHEM3303, CHEM3403, CHEM3504.

*Important! Ultimate responsibility rests with students to ensure that the required pre-requisites and co-requisite of selected courses are fulfilled. Students must take and pass all required courses in the selected major or/and minor in order to satisfy the degree graduation requirements.*

### **Major in Earth Sciences** (for candidates admitted in 2007 or thereafter)

In Earth Sciences, we study the nature and evolution of our planet. Geoscientists use their knowledge to increase our understanding of Earth processes and resources to improve the quality of human life. The Earth Science Major offers students an opportunity to learn about local and regional geological and environmental problems. The primary objective is to give students a robust training in the basics of Earth sciences as well as technical skills in certain specialized areas. Both theoretical and applied subjects such as mineralogy (the study of minerals), petrology (the study of rocks), geophysics, geochemistry, surficial processes, sedimentology, earth history, structural geology, fieldwork, regional geology, earth resources, environmental geology, hydrogeology and engineering geology are offered.

**Minimum Entry Requirement** : Nil

**Minimum Credit Requirement** : 72 credits (18 credits introductory level, 54 credits advanced level courses including capstone requirement)

**Impermissible Combination** : Minor in Earth Sciences

#### **Required courses (72 credits)**

	<b>Credits</b>
<b>1. Introductory level courses (18 credits)</b>	
EASC0105                   Earth Through Time	6
EASC0118                   Blue Planet	6
EASC0119                   Solid Earth	6
<b>2. Advanced level courses (48 credits)</b>	
<b>Any</b> 48 credits of advanced-level Earth Sciences courses.	

For students intending for a career in the geosciences or to apply for professional status in the future, they are strongly recommended to take the following courses:

EASC2108	Structural Geology	6
EASC2109	Igneous and Metamorphic Petrology	6
EASC2112	Earth Systems	6
EASC2113	Sedimentology	6
EASC2124	Geological Maps and Air Photographs	6
EASC2125	Global Tectonics	6
EASC2126	Mineralogy and Geochemistry	6
EASC3134	Regional Geology	6

#### **3. Capstone requirement (6 credits) \***

Students must take at least one of the following forms of extra-ordinary learning experience to fulfill the capstone requirement:

- EASC2301	Field Camps	6
- EASC2307	Directed Studies in Earth Sciences	6
- EASC3308	Earth Sciences Project	12

- Exchange programme (1 semester or 1 year) (non-credit bearing)
- Any other activities determined by the Department to conform to the spirit of capstone experience (non-credit bearing)

\* If the extra-ordinary learning experience is fulfilled by non-credit bearing activities, students must take an additional 6-credit advanced level earth sciences course (EASC2000 or EASC3000 level)

*Important! Ultimate responsibility rests with students to ensure that the required pre-requisites and co-requisite of selected courses are fulfilled. Students must take and pass all required courses in the selected major or/and minor in order to satisfy the degree graduation requirements.*

### **Major in Ecology & Biodiversity** (for candidates admitted in 2007 or thereafter)

Understanding biological diversity, the relationships between organisms and their environments, and how humans interact with both is critical for conserving the social and economic benefits yielded by the natural world, without irreversibly destroying or degrading it. This Major explores the biodiversity of microorganisms, plants and animals, with particular reference to Hong Kong and Southeast Asia. Natural ecological interactions between these organisms and their environment are considered, along with how the problems associated with environmental degradation and management can be approached from a scientific viewpoint. There are many opportunities, both within Hong Kong and internationally, for graduates in this field.

**Minimum Entry Requirement** : Nil

**Minimum Credit Requirement** : 72 credits (18 credits introductory level, 54 credits advanced level courses including capstone requirement)

**Impermissible Combination** : Major in Biology;  
Environmental Protection  
Minor in Ecology & Biodiversity;  
Environmental Protection

#### **Required courses (72 credits)**

#### **Credits**

##### **1. Introductory level courses (18 credits)**

BIOL0129 (BIOL1119)	Introductory Microbiology	3
BIOL0603 (ECOL0040)	Ecology and Evolution	3
BIOL0604 (ECOL0041)	Evolutionary Diversity	6
BIOL0605 (ECOL0042)	Ecology Field Course	3

**Plus** at least 3 credits from the following courses:

BIOL0601 (ECOL0020)	Ecology of Hong Kong	3
BIOL0602 (ECOL0036)	Origins of Life and Astrobiology	3
CHEM1007	Basic Chemistry for Biological Sciences	6
EASC0105	Earth through Time	6

##### **2. Advanced level courses (48 credits)**

BIOL2608 (ECOL2006)	Biometrics	6
BIOL2611 (ECOL2013)	Systematics & Phylogenetics	6
BIOL2612 (ECOL2014)	Conservation Biology	6

**Plus** at least 30 credits from the following courses <sup>1</sup>:

BIOL2210	Evolution	6
BIOL2606 (ECOL2004)	Environmental Microbiology	6
BIOL2607 (ECOL2005)	Fish Biology	6
BIOL2610 (ECOL2011)	Biological Oceanography	6
BIOL2613 (ECOL2015)	Fungal Diversity	3
BIOL2615 (ECOL2023)	Freshwater Ecology	6
BIOL2616 (ECOL2024)	Plant Structure and Evolution	3
BIOL2617 (ECOL2028)	Coastal Ecology	6

BIOL2618 (ECOL2029)	How Humans Evolved	6
BIOL2619 (ECOL2032)	Terrestrial Ecology	6
BIOL2620 (ECOL2044)	Extremophiles	3
BIOL3621 (ECOL3018)	Fisheries and Mariculture	6
BIOL3624 (ECOL3034)	Environmental Monitoring and Remediation Techniques	6

### 3. Capstone requirement (6 credits) \*

Students must take at least one of the following forms of extra-ordinary learning experience to fulfill the capstone requirement:

- BIOL2318	Biological Sciences Field Course	6
- BIOL2319	Biological Sciences Internship	6
- BIOL2320	Directed Studies in Biological Sciences	6
- BIOL3321	Biological Sciences Project	12

- Exchange programme (1 semester or 1 year) (non-credit bearing)
- Any other activities determined by the Major Coordinator to conform to the (non-credit bearing) spirit of capstone experience.

\* If the extra-ordinary learning experience is fulfilled by non-credit bearing activities, students must take an additional 6-credit advanced level biological sciences course (BIOL2000 or BIOL3000 level)

Note: <sup>1</sup> Students who wish to specialize in a certain area are recommended to choose courses from the following lists.

- (a) For students who are interested in ecology & evolution: BIOL2210, BIOL2606 (ECOL2004), BIOL2615 (ECOL2023), BIOL2616 (ECOL2024), BIOL2617 (ECOL2028), BIOL2618 (ECOL2029), BIOL2619 (ECOL2032).
- (b) For students who are interested in marine biology: BIOL2607 (ECOL2005), BIOL2610 (ECOL2011), BIOL2617 (ECOL2028), BIOL3621 (ECOL3018).
- (c) For students who are interested in microbiology: BIOL2606 (ECOL2004), BIOL2613 (ECOL2015), BIOL2620 (ECOL2044), BIOL3624 (ECOL3034).

*Important! Ultimate responsibility rests with students to ensure that the required pre-requisites and co-requisite of selected courses are fulfilled. Students must take and pass all required courses in the selected major or/and minor in order to satisfy the degree graduation requirements.*

### Major in Environmental Protection (for candidates admitted in 2007 or thereafter)

Humans are responsible for modification and degradation of nature yet it is only by human actions that we can protect habitats, ecosystems and the organisms that they contain for future generations. This Major helps students understand the causes of environmental degradation, and the ways in which they can be reduced or mitigated, including topics such as environmental impact assessment, ecotoxicology and bioremediation. Conservation biology and fisheries are also important components of this Major, which aims to provide the intellectual and practical skills needed for professionals working in environmental protection and related jobs.

**Minimum Entry Requirement** : Nil

**Minimum Credit Requirement** : 72 credits (18 credits introductory level, 54 credits advanced level courses including capstone requirement)

**Impermissible Combination** : Major in Biology;  
Ecology & Biodiversity  
Minor in Ecology & Biodiversity;  
Environmental Protection

### **Required courses (72 credits)**

#### **1. Introductory level courses (18 credits)**

At least 18 credits from the following courses:

		Credits
BIOL0129 (BIOL1119)	Introductory Microbiology	3
BIOL0601 (ECOL0020)	Ecology of Hong Kong	3
BIOL0602 (ECOL0036)	Origins of Life and Astrobiology	3
BIOL0603 (ECOL0040)	Ecology and Evolution	3
BIOL0604 (ECOL0041)	Evolutionary Diversity	6
BIOL0605 (ECOL0042)	Ecology Field Course	3
CHEM1007	Basic Chemistry for Biological Sciences	6
EASC0105	Earth through Time	6

#### **2. Advanced level courses (48 credits)**

At least 48 credits from the following courses:

BIOL2606 (ECOL2004)	Environmental Microbiology	6
BIOL2608 (ECOL2006)	Biometrics	6
BIOL2612 (ECOL2014)	Conservation Biology	6
BIOL2614 (ECOL2016)	Environmental Toxicology	6
BIOL3621 (ECOL3018)	Fisheries and Mariculture	6
BIOL3622 (ECOL3027)	Environmental Impact Assessment	6
BIOL3624 (ECOL3034)	Environmental Monitoring and Remediation Techniques	6
CHEM2102	Environmental Chemistry	6
CHEM2202	Chemical Instrumentation	6

#### **3. Capstone requirement (6 credits) \***

Students must take at least one of the following forms of extra-ordinary learning experience to fulfill the capstone requirement:

- BIOL2318	Biological Sciences Field Course	6
- BIOL2319	Biological Sciences Internship	6
- BIOL2320	Directed Studies in Biological Sciences	6
- BIOL3321	Biological Sciences Project	12

- Exchange programme (1 semester or 1 year) (non-credit bearing)
- Any other activities determined by the Department to conform to the spirit of capstone experience (non-credit bearing)

\* If the extra-ordinary learning experience is fulfilled by non-credit bearing activities, students must take an additional 6-credit advanced level biological sciences course (BIOL2000 or BIOL3000 level)

*Important! Ultimate responsibility rests with students to ensure that the required pre-requisites and co-requisite of selected courses are fulfilled. Students must take and pass all required courses in the selected major or/and minor in order to satisfy the degree graduation requirements.*

#### **Major in Food & Nutritional Science (for candidates admitted in 2007 or thereafter)**

This is a challenging area of interdisciplinary study. The science of food and nutrition aims at improving the quality of life through the understanding of interactions among food, environment and the human body. This Major will appeal to those who have a genuine interest in the food system and/or

nutrition. Beginning with a handful of core courses, you will be able to mix and match advanced courses that suit your personal interest, be it food product development and analysis, metabolism and body function or nutrient-gene interaction. In the era where food safety, and diet and health take up news headlines this Major has been extremely popular.

<b>Minimum Entry Requirement</b>	:	AL / AS Biology and AL / AS Chemistry or equivalent or a pass in BIOL0126 Fundamentals of Biology and CHEM0004 Fundamental Chemistry
<b>Minimum Credit Requirement</b>	:	72 credits (18 credits introductory level, 54 credits advanced level courses including capstone requirement)
<b>Impermissible Combination</b>	:	Major in Biology; Biotechnology Minor in Food & Nutritional Science

### **Required courses (72 credits)**

		<b>Credits</b>
<b>1. Introductory level courses (18 credits)</b>		
BIOC1001	Basic Biochemistry <b>OR</b> BIOL1125 Introduction to Biochemistry 6 <b>OR</b> CHEM1406 Basic Organic Chemistry	
BIOL1123	Food Chemistry	3
BIOL1513	Food Science Laboratory	3
BIOL1514	Nutrition and Metabolism	6

(students are strongly recommended to take BIOL1122 Functional Biology as an elective)

### **2. Advanced level courses (48 credits)**

BIOL2501	Food Processing and Preservation	6
BIOL2505	Food Safety and Quality Management	6
BIOL2515	Food Microbiology	6
BIOL2517	Food Analysis	3
BIOL2518	Laboratory in Nutritional Science	3
BIOL2519	Essential Nutrients & Functional Foods	6
BIOL3526	Advanced Laboratory in Nutritional Science	3

**Plus** at least 15 credits from the following courses:

BIOL2004	Bioexploitation of Filamentous Fungi	3
BIOL2205	Basic Immunology	6
BIOL2207	Endocrinology	6
BIOL2215	Animal Physiology	6
BIOL2302	Fermentation Technology	6
BIOL2303	Introduction to Molecular Biology	6
BIOL2503	Grain Production & Utilization	6
BIOL2507	Meat and Dairy Science	6
BIOL2520	Food Toxicology	3
BIOL2521	Food Engineering	3
BIOL3516	Nutrition and Brain Function	3
BIOL3522	Nutrigenomics	3
BIOL3523	Principles of Chinese Medicated Diet	3
BIOL3524	Diet and Disease	3
BIOL3525	Food Product Development	3
PBSL2229	Exercise Physiology	6

### 3. Capstone requirement (6 credits) \*

Students must take at least one of the following forms of extra-ordinary learning experience to fulfill the capstone requirement:

- |            |   |    |
|------------|---|----|
| - BIOL2318 | Biological Sciences Field Course        | 6  |
| - BIOL2319 | Biological Sciences Internship          | 6  |
| - BIOL2320 | Directed Studies in Biological Sciences | 6  |
| - BIOL3321 | Biological Sciences Project             | 12 |
- Summer Internship (non-credit bearing)
  - Site visits to Mainland/overseas universities, research centres, non-profit organizations or (non-credit bearing) industries in summer
  - Exchange programme (1 semester or 1 year) (non-credit bearing)
  - Any other activities determined by the Department to conform to the spirit of capstone experience (non-credit bearing)

\* If the extra-ordinary learning experience is fulfilled by non-credit bearing activities, students must take an additional 6-credit advanced level biological sciences course (BIOL2000 or BIOL3000 level)

*Important! Ultimate responsibility rests with students to ensure that the required pre-requisites and co-requisite of selected courses are fulfilled. Students must take and pass all required courses in the selected major or/and minor in order to satisfy the degree graduation requirements.*

### Major in Materials Science (for candidates admitted in 2007 or thereafter)

In the past few decades, we have witnessed a rapid development in technology that has had a major impact on the way we live. For example, synthetic fabrics have revolutionized the clothing industry, and the on-board computers that helped guide the Apollo 11 mission to the moon were less powerful than the personal computers that sit on the desks in every office and in many homes today. All these changes were due to the fact that new materials were developed, which was the collective effort of scientists from many different areas. Materials science is an interdisciplinary subject that involves studies of the chemical and physical properties of materials. In this Major, students will be required to take basic courses in chemistry and physics. The chemistry of materials synthesis (e.g. organic and inorganic materials) and their physical properties (mechanical, electrical, and optical properties) will be introduced. In the second and third years, advanced courses will focus on polymeric materials, nanomaterials, semiconducting materials, and their characterization techniques. In addition, students are required to take advanced physics and chemistry courses as electives. The Major is designed for students who are interested in materials science and technology for postgraduate studies.

**Minimum Entry Requirement** : 1. AL Chemistry; and AL / AS Physics or AL Engineering Science; or  
2. a pass in PHYS0625 Physics by Inquiry and CHEM0004 Fundamental Chemistry; or equivalent

**Minimum Credit Requirement** : 72 credits (18 credits introductory level, 54 credits advanced level courses including capstone requirement)

**Impermissible Combination** : Nil

#### Required courses (72 credits)

#### Credits

##### 1. Introductory level courses (18 credits)

CHEM1002	Chemistry: Principles and Concepts	6
CHEM1005	Introduction to Materials Science	6
PHYS1413	Physics in a Nutshell	6

## 2. Advanced level courses (48 credits)

CHEM2109	Introduction to Materials Chemistry	6
CHEM2510 (CHEM2507)	Principles and Applications of Spectroscopic and Analytical Techniques	6
CHEM3110	Advanced Materials	6
PHYS2627	Introductory Quantum Physics	6

**Plus** at least 18 credits from the following courses:

PHYS2221	Introductory Solid State Physics	6
PHYS2222	Waves and Optics	6
PHYS2225	Solid State Devices	6
PHYS2227	Laser & Spectroscopy	6
PHYS2229	Thin Film Physics	6
PHYS2234	Sensors and Computer Control for Physical Measurements	6
PHYS2235	Physics of Nanomaterials	6
PHYS2426	Intermediate Experimental Physics	6

**Plus** at least 6 credits of advanced level Chemistry courses (CHEM2000 or CHEM3000 level), subject to prerequisite requirements.

## 3. Capstone requirement (6 credits) \*

Students must take at least one of the following forms of extra-ordinary learning experience to fulfill the capstone requirement:

- CHEM2111	Directed Studies in Chemistry	6
- CHEM3105	Chemistry Project	12
- PHYS2533	Directed Studies in Physics	6
- PHYS3531	Physics Project	12

- Summer Research Chemistry Project (non-credit bearing)
- Summer Chemistry Internship (non-credit bearing)
- Summer Physics Internship (non-credit bearing)
- Exchange programme (1 semester or 1 year) (non-credit bearing)
- Any other activities determined by the Department to conform to the spirit of capstone experience (non-credit bearing)

\* If the extra-ordinary learning experience is fulfilled by non-credit bearing activities, students must take an additional 6-credit advanced level chemistry / physics course (CHEM2000 or PHYS2000 or CHEM3000 or PHYS3000 level)

Note: For students having major/major, or major/minor combinations of Materials Science / Chemistry, or Materials Science / Physics, a set of replacement courses from the Departments of Chemistry and Physics will be made available so that there will be no overlap with the core courses in this major.

*Important! Ultimate responsibility rests with students to ensure that the required pre-requisites and co-requisite of selected courses are fulfilled. Students must take and pass all required courses in the selected major or/and minor in order to satisfy the degree graduation requirements.*

**Major in Mathematics** (for candidates admitted in 2007 or thereafter)

Mathematics has been referred to as "our invisible culture". Most people agree mathematics finds applications ranging from traditional ones in the physical sciences and engineering to more recent ones in the life sciences, economics, finance and management. Yet, many are dazzled by achievements mathematics helps to bring about that they forget about mathematics itself! A Major in Mathematics provides a solid comprehensive undergraduate education in the subject and will nurture quantitative reasoning, logical and analytical thinking, meticulous care to work, ability to conceptualize, problem-solving skill and innovative imagination. Different specializations are possible with our diverse courses, which lead to careers in education, economics and finance, logistics, management, research and further studies, etc.

- Minimum Entry Requirement<sup>#</sup>** : 1. HKCEE Additional Mathematics and AS Mathematics and Statistics; or  
2. AL Pure Mathematics; or  
3. a pass in MATH0201 (for those with HKCEE Math only) or pass in MATH1804 (for those with AS Math & Stat only)

**Minimum Credit Requirement** : 72 credits (18 credits introductory level, 54 credits advanced level courses including capstone requirement)

**Impermissible Combination** : Minor in Mathematics

**Required courses (72 credits)**

	<b>Credits</b>
<b>1. Introductory level courses (18 credits)</b>	
MATH1001	Fundamental Concepts of Mathematics
MATH1111	Linear Algebra
MATH1211	Multivariable Calculus
<b>2. Advanced level courses (48 credits)</b>	
MATH2201	Introduction to Mathematical Analysis
MATH2301	Algebra I
MATH2401	Analysis I

**Plus** at least 18 credits from the following courses <sup>1</sup>:

MATH2304	Introduction to Number Theory	6
MATH2403	Functions of a Complex Variable	6
MATH2405	Differential Equations	6
MATH2600	Discrete Mathematics	6
MATH2601	Numerical Analysis	6
MATH2603	Probability Theory	6
MATH2901	Operational Research I	6
MATH2904	Introduction to Optimization	6

**Plus** at least 12 credits of advanced level Mathematics courses (MATH2000 or MATH3000 level), subject to prerequisite requirements.

**3. Capstone requirement (6 credits) \***

Students must take at least one of the following forms of extra-ordinary learning experience to fulfill the capstone requirement:

- MATH2002	Mathematics Seminar <sup>2</sup>	6
- MATH2999	Directed Studies in Mathematics	6
- MATH3999	Mathematics Project	12

- Any other activities determined by the Department to conform to the spirit of capstone experience (non-credit bearing)

\* If the extra-ordinary learning experience is fulfilled by non-credit bearing activities, students must take an additional 6-credit advanced level mathematics course (MATH2000 or MATH3000 level)

Note: <sup>#</sup> Students with different mathematics background must consult the Department of Mathematics for advice on the bridging courses.

<sup>1</sup> Students who wish to specialize in a certain area are recommended to choose courses from the following lists.

- (a) For students who are interested in pure mathematics: MATH2303, MATH2304, MATH2402, MATH2403, MATH3302, MATH3310, MATH3404, MATH3501, MATH3502.
- (b) For students who are interested in computational mathematics, logistics, and/or operations research: MATH2303, MATH2600, MATH2601, MATH2603, MATH2901, MATH2904, MATH2905, MATH3602, MATH3902, MATH3903.
- (c) For students who are interested in economics and finance, and plan to take some professional examinations in related fields: MATH2906, MATH2907, and non-mathematics courses BUSI1002, FINA1001, FINA2802, ECON0701, ECON2101, ECON2102.

<sup>2</sup> MATH2002 is for first year BSc students only.

*Important! Ultimate responsibility rests with students to ensure that the required pre-requisites and co-requisite of selected courses are fulfilled. Students must take and pass all required courses in the selected major or/and minor in order to satisfy the degree graduation requirements.*

### **Major in Physics (for candidates admitted in 2007 or thereafter)**

The Major in Physics is intended for students who would like to acquire a well-rounded foundation on the subject. It covers a wide range of basic courses in theoretical and experimental physics to prepare students for future careers which require a professional knowledge in physics, such as the semiconductor industry, education, and research. A large selection of elective courses is provided for students to pursue a wide range of topics from the small scale of nanomaterials to the large scale of astrophysics.

**Minimum Entry Requirement** : 1. AL / AS Physics or AL Engineering Science; and HKCEE Additional Mathematics or AS Mathematics and Statistics or AL Pure Mathematics; or  
2. A pass in PHYS0625 Physics by Inquiry; or equivalent

**Minimum Credit Requirement** : 72 credits (18 credits introductory level, 54 credits advanced level courses including capstone requirement)

**Impermissible Combination** : Minor in Physics

#### **Required courses (72 credits)**

		<b>Credits</b>
<b>1. Introductory level courses (18 credits)</b>		
PHYS1414	General Physics I	6
PHYS1415	General Physics II	6

**Plus** at least 6 credits of introductory level Physics courses (PHYS0000 or PHYS1000 level), subject to prerequisite requirements.

## 2. Advanced level courses (48 credits)<sup>1</sup>

PHYS2627	Introductory Quantum Physics <sup>2</sup>	6
----------	---	---

**Plus** at least 12 credits from the following courses:

PHYS2321	Introductory Electromagnetism	6
PHYS2322	Statistical Mechanics and Thermodynamics	6
PHYS2323	Introductory Quantum Mechanics	6
PHYS2324	Classical Mechanics	6
PHYS2626	Introductory Classical Mechanics	6

**Plus** at least 30 credits of advanced level Physics courses (PHYS2000 or PHYS3000 level), subject to prerequisite requirements.

## 3. Capstone requirement (6 credits) \*

Students must take at least one of the following forms of extra-ordinary learning experience to fulfill the capstone requirement:

- PHYS2533              Directed Studies in Physics              6
- PHYS3531              Physics Project              12
  
- Summer Internship (non-credit bearing)
- Exchange programme (1 semester or 1 year) (non-credit bearing)
- Any other activities determined by the Department to conform to the spirit of capstone experience (non-credit bearing)

\* If the extra-ordinary learning experience is fulfilled by non-credit bearing activities, students must take an additional 6-credit advanced level physics course (PHYS2000 or PHYS3000 level)

Note: <sup>1</sup> Students who intend to pursue further studies in Physics are recommended to take also PHYS3331 and PHYS3332

<sup>2</sup> Students may consider taking PHYS2627 as early as possible to allow for maximum flexibility in course selection for advanced level courses.

*Important! Ultimate responsibility rests with students to ensure that the required pre-requisites and co-requisite of selected courses are fulfilled. Students must take and pass all required courses in the selected major or/and minor in order to satisfy the degree graduation requirements.*

## Major in Mathematics/Physics<sup>1</sup> (for candidates admitted in 2007 or thereafter)

The Major in Mathematics/Physics is intended for students who would like to acquire a solid foundation in both the subjects of physics and mathematics. This major is catered especially for students interested in the more theoretical aspects of physics. With the comprehensive training received, graduates from this major are expected to be well-prepared to go on further studies and to pursue careers in a many fields of science and engineering.

**Minimum Entry Requirement<sup>#</sup>** : 1. AL / AS Physics or AL Engineering Science; and  
2. HKCEE Additional Mathematics and AS Mathematics and Statistics, or AL Pure Mathematics; or

3. a pass in PHYS0625 and pass in MATH0201 (for those with HKCEE only) or a pass in MATH1804 (for those with AS Math & Stat only).

**Minimum Credit Requirement** : 78 credits (24 credits introductory level, 54 credits advanced level courses including capstone requirement)

**Impermissible Combination** : Major in Mathematics;  
Physics  
Minor in Mathematics;  
Physics

### Required courses (78 credits)

	Credits
<b>1. Introductory level courses (24 credits)<sup>2</sup></b>	
MATH1111	6
MATH1211	6
PHYS1414	6
PHYS1415	6
<b>2. Advanced level courses (48 credits)<sup>3</sup></b>	
MATH2201	6
MATH2301	6
MATH2403	6
MATH2405	6
PHYS2321	6
PHYS2322	6
PHYS2626	6
PHYS2627	6

### **3. Capstone requirement (6 credits) \***

Students must take at least one of the following forms of extra-ordinary learning experience to fulfill the capstone requirement:

- MATH2002 Mathematics Seminar <sup>5</sup> 6
  - MATH2999 Directed Studies in Mathematics 6
  - MATH3999 Mathematics Project 12
  - PHYS2533 Directed Studies in Physics 6
  - PHYS3531 Physics Project 12
- Summer Internship (non-credit bearing)
  - Exchange programme (1 semester or 1 year) (non-credit bearing)
  - Any other activities determined by the Department to conform to the spirit of capstone experience (non-credit bearing)

\* If the extra-ordinary learning experience is fulfilled by non-credit bearing activities, students must take an additional 6-credit advanced level mathematics / physics course (MATH2000 or PHYS2000 or MATH3000 or PHYS3000 level)

Note: # Students with different mathematics background must consult the Department of Mathematics for advice on the bridging courses.

<sup>1</sup> Students would have already satisfied requirements from Blocks A and B with this curriculum.

- <sup>2</sup> Students are recommended to take also MATH1001.
- <sup>3</sup> Students who intend to pursue further studies in Mathematics/Physics are recommended to take also MATH2401, MATH3501, PHYS3331, and PHYS3332.
- <sup>4</sup> Students may consider taking PHYS2627 as early as possible to allow for maximum flexibility in course selection for advanced level courses.
- <sup>5</sup> MATH2002 is for first year BSc students only.

*Important! Ultimate responsibility rests with students to ensure that the required pre-requisites and co-requisite of selected courses are fulfilled. Students must take and pass all required courses in the selected major or/and minor in order to satisfy the degree graduation requirements.*

### **Major in Risk Management** (for candidates admitted in 2007 or thereafter)

The Major in Risk Management enables students to gain an intellectual understanding of both financial and investment risks. Exposure to various statistical techniques for risk modelling is provided, with specific applications to financial and insurance problems. Career opportunities are available in financial institutions and large corporations including banks and consulting firms.

**Minimum Entry Requirement** : Nil

**Minimum Credit Requirement** : 72-78 credits (18-24 credits introductory level, 54 credits advanced level courses including capstone requirement)

**Impermissible Combination** : Major in Statistics  
Minor in Risk Management;  
Statistics

#### **Required courses (72 or 78 credits)**

#### **Credits**

##### **1. Introductory level courses (18 or 24 credits)**

###### **(a) For students having A-level Pure Mathematics or AS-level Mathematics & Statistics or equivalent:**

STAT1301	Probability and Statistics I	6
STAT1302	Probability and Statistics II	6

**Plus** at least 6 credits from the following courses:

STAT1303	Data Management	6
STAT1304	The Analysis of Sample Surveys	6
STAT1305	Introduction to Demography	6

###### **(b) For students not meeting the pre-requisites in (a) above:**

STAT0301	Elementary Statistical Methods	6
STAT1301	Probability and Statistics I	6
STAT1302	Probability and Statistics II	6

(STAT0301 and STAT1301 must be taken in the 1<sup>st</sup> semester of Year I)

**Plus** at least 6 credits from the following courses:

STAT1303	Data Management	6
STAT1304	The Analysis of Sample Surveys	6
STAT1305	Introduction to Demography	6

##### **2. Advanced level courses (48 credits)**

STAT2301	Linear Statistical Analysis	6
----------	-----------------------------	---

STAT2309	The Statistics of Investment Risk	6
STAT2310	Risk Management and Insurance	6
STAT3301	Time-series Analysis	6

**Plus** at least 24 credits from the following courses:

STAT2303	Probability Modelling	6
STAT2315	Practical Mathematics for Investment	6
STAT2806	Financial Economics	6
STAT3305	Financial Data Analysis	6
STAT3308	Financial Engineering	6
STAT3316	Advanced Probability	6
STAT3317	Computational Statistics	6
STAT3812	Stochastic Calculus with Financial Applications	6

### 3. Capstone requirement (6 credits) \*

Students must take at least one of the following forms of extra-ordinary learning experience to fulfill the capstone requirement:

- |   |                                |    |
|---|--------------------------------|----|
| - STAT2318  | Directed Studies in Statistics | 6  |
| - STAT3319  | Statistics Project             | 12 |
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Internship (at least 64 hours) via the Department or CPEC (non-credit bearing)</li> <li>- Student researcher (non-credit bearing)</li> <li>- Exchange programme (1 semester or 1 year) (non-credit bearing)</li> <li>- Any other activities determined by the Department to conform to the spirit of capstone experience (non-credit bearing)</li> </ul> |                                |    |

\* If the extra-ordinary learning experience is fulfilled by non-credit bearing activities, students must take an additional 6-credit advanced level statistics course (STAT2000 or STAT3000 level)

*Important! Ultimate responsibility rests with students to ensure that the required pre-requisites and co-requisite of selected courses are fulfilled. Students must take and pass all required courses in the selected major or/and minor in order to satisfy the degree graduation requirements.*

### Major in Statistics (for candidates admitted in 2007 or thereafter)

The Major in Statistics equips students with powerful mathematical, analytic and computational skills, which are in great demand in many practical areas. It establishes for students a strong background in statistical concepts, and aims to provide a broad and solid training in applied statistical methodologies. Career opportunities are available in business, finance, industry, computing, marketing, communications, environmental protection, health organizations, as well as in scientific and academic research.

- Minimum Entry Requirement** : Nil  
**Minimum Credit Requirement** : 72-78 credits (18-24 credits introductory level, 54 credits advanced level courses including capstone requirement)  
**Impermissible Combination** : Major in Risk Management  
                                   Minor in Risk Management;  
                                   Statistics

### Required courses (72 or 78 credits)

	Credits
1. Introductory level courses (18 or 24 credits)	

**(a) For students having A-level Pure Mathematics or AS-level Mathematics & Statistics or equivalent:**

STAT1301	Probability and Statistics I	6
STAT1302	Probability and Statistics II	6

**Plus** at least 6 credits from the following courses:

STAT1303	Data Management	6
STAT1304	The Analysis of Sample Surveys	6
STAT1305	Introduction to Demography	6

**(b) For students not meeting the pre-requisites in (a) above:**

STAT0301	Elementary Statistical Methods	6
STAT1301	Probability and Statistics I	6
STAT1302	Probability and Statistics II	6
(STAT0301 and STAT1301 must be taken in the 1 <sup>st</sup> semester of Year I)		

**Plus** at least 6 credits from the following courses:

STAT1303	Data Management	6
STAT1304	The Analysis of Sample Surveys	6
STAT1305	Introduction to Demography	6

**2. Advanced level courses (48 credits)**

STAT2301	Linear Statistical Analysis	6
STAT3301	Time-series Analysis	6
STAT3302	Multivariate Data Analysis	6
STAT3304	Computer-aided Statistical Modelling	6

**Plus** at least 24 credits from Lists A and B, among which at least 12 credits from List A:

**List A:**

STAT2302	Statistical Inference	6
STAT2303	Probability Modelling	6
STAT2308	Statistical Genetics	6
STAT2312	Data Mining	6
STAT2313	Marketing Engineering	6
STAT3305	Financial Data Analysis	6
STAT3306	Selected Topics in Statistics	6
STAT3308	Financial Engineering	6
STAT3316	Advanced Probability	6
STAT3317	Computational Statistics	6
STAT3319	Statistics Project	12 <sup>#</sup>
STAT3811	Survival Analysis	6
STAT3812	Stochastic Calculus with Financial Applications	6

**List B:**

STAT2304	Design and Analysis of Experiments	6
STAT2305	Quality Control and Management	6
STAT2306	Business Logistics	6
STAT2307	Statistics in Clinical Medicine & Bio-medical Research	6
STAT2309	The Statistics of Investment Risk	6
STAT2310	Risk Management and Insurance	6
STAT2315	Practical Mathematics for Investment	6

STAT2801	Life Contingencies	6
STAT2805	Credibility Theory and Loss Distributions	6
STAT2806	Financial Economics	6
STAT3810	Risk Theory	6

### 3. Capstone requirement (6 credits) \*

Students must take at least one of the following forms of extra-ordinary learning experience to fulfill the capstone requirement:

- |  |                                |                 |
|--|--------------------------------|-----------------|
| - STAT2318   | Directed Studies in Statistics | 6               |
| - STAT3319   | Statistics Project             | 12 <sup>#</sup> |
| - Internship (at least 64 hours) via the Department or CPEC (non-credit bearing)   |                                |                 |
| - Student researcher (non-credit bearing)  |                                |                 |
| - Exchange programme (1 semester or 1 year) (non-credit bearing)   |                                |                 |
| - Any other activities determined by the Department to conform to the spirit of capstone experience (non-credit bearing) |                                |                 |

\* If the extra-ordinary learning experience is fulfilled by non-credit bearing activities, students must take an additional 6-credit advanced level statistics course (STAT2000 or STAT3000 level)

<sup>#</sup> 6 credits counted towards capstone requirement.

*Important! Ultimate responsibility rests with students to ensure that the required pre-requisites and co-requisite of selected courses are fulfilled. Students must take and pass all required courses in the selected major or/and minor in order to satisfy the degree graduation requirements.*

### Minor in Actuarial Studies (for candidates admitted in 2007 or thereafter)

Mathematics, Physics, Statistics, Economics, Finance, and other Science majors who are taking a lot of mathematics and had very strong Advanced Level Pure Mathematics grades are suitable for choosing this Minor.

- Minimum Entry Requirement** : AL Pure Mathematics or AS Mathematics and Statistics or equivalent  
**Minimum Credit Requirement** : 36-42 credits (12-18 credits introductory level & 24 credits advanced level courses)  
**Impermissible Combination** : Nil

### Required courses (36 or 42 credits)

#### Credits

##### 1. Introductory level courses (12 or 18 credits)

For students majoring in Risk Management or Statistics (12 credits)

STAT1305	Introduction to Demography	6
STAT1802	Financial Mathematics	6
STAT2303	Probability Modelling	6
STAT2306	Business Logistics	6

For students minoring in Risk Management or Statistics (12 credits)

STAT1302	Probability and Statistics II	6
STAT1801	Probability and Statistics: Foundations of Actuarial Science	6
STAT1802	Financial Mathematics	6
STAT2303	Probability Modelling	6

For students not belonging to the above two categories (18 credits)

STAT1301	Probability and Statistics I	6
STAT1302	Probability and Statistics II	6
STAT1801	Probability and Statistics: Foundations of Actuarial Science	6
STAT1802	Financial Mathematics	6
STAT2303	Probability Modelling	6

## 2. Advanced level courses (24 credits)

At least 24 credits from the following courses:

STAT2801	Life Contingencies	6
STAT2805	Credibility Theory and Loss Distributions	6
STAT2806	Financial Economics	6
STAT2807	Corporate Finance for Actuarial Science	6
STAT3810	Risk Theory	6
STAT3811	Survival Analysis	6
STAT3812	Stochastic Calculus with Financial Applications	6

*Important! Ultimate responsibility rests with students to ensure that the required pre-requisites and co-requisite of selected courses are fulfilled. Students must take and pass all required courses in the selected major or/and minor in order to satisfy the degree graduation requirements.*

## Minor in Astronomy (for candidates admitted in 2007 only)

Have you ever enjoyed a beautiful starry night and wondered it came to be like that? The Minor in Astronomy is intended for students who would like to acquire some appreciation of the beauties of the universe. Students are offered the opportunity to receive training in both the theoretical and practical aspect of astronomy.

**Minimum Entry Requirement** : Nil<sup>1</sup>

**Minimum Credit Requirement** : 36 credits (12 credits introductory level & 24 credits advanced level courses)

**Impermissible Combination** : Nil<sup>2</sup>

\* Refer to the Physics Department website <http://www.physics.hku.hk> for suggested curriculum.

## Required courses (36 credits)

### Credits

#### 1. Introductory level courses (12 credits)

PHYS0001	Nature of the Universe I: Introduction to Observational Astronomy and the Solar System	3
PHYS0002	Nature of the Universe II: Stars, Galaxies and Cosmology for Beginners	3

**Plus** at least 6 credits of introductory level Physics course (PHYS0000 or PHYS1000 level)<sup>3</sup>

#### 2. Advanced level courses (24 credits)

At least 24 credits of advanced level Physics courses (PHYS2000 or PHYS3000) level, out of which at least 12 credits are from the following courses:

PHYS2021	The Physical Universe	6
----------	-----------------------	---

PHYS2022	Observational Astronomy	6
PHYS2023	Stellar Physics	6
PHYS2024	Introduction to Cosmology	6
PHYS3031	Astrophysics	6
PHYS3033	General Relativity	6
PHYS3034	Cosmology	6

- Note:
- <sup>1</sup> Students without AL/AS Physics are strongly advised to take PHYS1413 to allow for maximum flexibility in selection of advanced level Physics courses. Students without HKCEE Physics are strongly advised to take PHYS0625 and PHYS1413 to allow for maximum flexibility in selection of advanced level Physics courses.
  - <sup>2</sup> For students having major/minor combination of Physics / Astronomy, or Materials Science / Astronomy, any single introductory or advanced level Physics course can be used to satisfy a major or minor requirement only once.
  - <sup>3</sup> Students are advised to take at least one of the following courses: PHYS1413, PHYS1414, or PHYS1415 to allow for maximum flexibility in selection for advanced level Physics courses.

*Important! Ultimate responsibility rests with students to ensure that the required pre-requisites and co-requisite of selected courses are fulfilled. Students must take and pass all required courses in the selected major or/and minor in order to satisfy the degree graduation requirements.*

### **Minor in Biochemistry** (for candidates admitted in 2007 or thereafter)

Biochemistry, strengthened with molecular biology, is a field with enormous applications to our daily lives. It also is a discipline of sublime fascination. Our understanding of the biochemical bases of various life processes has greatly improved human welfare, particularly the medical and nutritional aspects. Further advances in this rapidly expanding field of knowledge, including building and establishing new conceptual frameworks, development of novel methodologies and techniques, should pave way to even more spectacular insights into nature and lead to a better control of our destiny.

The Minor in Biochemistry offered by the Department of Biochemistry is designed to provide students with both basic and advanced knowledge in modern biochemistry and molecular biology. Our goal is to develop and equip students with enough critical thinking and analytical skills so that they can embark on a career in biochemical sciences.

- Minimum Entry Requirement** : AS Biology or AS Chemistry or a pass in CHEM0004 Fundamental Chemistry or equivalent
- Minimum Credit Requirement** : 36 credits (12 credits introductory level & 24 credits advanced level courses)
- Impermissible Combination** : Major in Biochemistry

#### **Required courses (36 credits)**

		<b>Credits</b>
<b>1. Introductory level courses (12 credits)</b>		
BIOC1001	Basic Biochemistry	6
BIOC1003	Introduction to Molecular Genetics	6
<b>2. Advanced level courses (24 credits)</b>		
BIOL2301	Protein Structure and Function	6

**Plus** at least 6 credits of BIOC2000 level courses and at least 12 credits of BIOC3000 level courses, subject to prerequisite requirements.

*Important! Ultimate responsibility rests with students to ensure that the required pre-requisites and co-requisite of selected courses are fulfilled. Students must take and pass all required courses in the selected major or/and minor in order to satisfy the degree graduation requirements.*

### **Minor in Biology** (for candidates admitted in 2007 or thereafter)

The discipline of biology applies to every aspect of our existence on Earth, and so an understanding of biological principles helps to enrich our appreciation of life and also act as a complementary subject to many other disciplines including the physical sciences and humanities.

**Minimum Entry Requirement** : AL Biology or equivalent or a pass in BIOL0126 Fundamentals of Biology

**Minimum Credit Requirement** : 36 credits (12 credits introductory level & 24 credits advanced level courses)

**Impermissible Combination** : Major in Biology

#### **Required courses (36 credits)**

	<b>Credits</b>
<b>1. Introductory level courses (12 credits)</b>	

BIOL1122 Functional Biology 6

**Plus** at least 6 credits of the following courses:

BIOL0129 (BIOL1119)	Introductory Microbiology	3
BIOL0602 (ECOL0036)	Origins of Life and Astrobiology	3
BIOL0603 (ECOL0040)	Ecology and Evolution	3
BIOL0604 (ECOL0041)	Evolutionary Diversity	6
BIOL1106	Genetics	3

(students are strongly recommended to take “BIOC1001 Basic Biochemistry or BIOL1125 Introduction to Biochemistry” as an elective)

#### **2. Advanced level courses (24 credits)**

BIOL2303	Introduction to Molecular Biology	6
----------	-----------------------------------	---

**Plus** at least 18 credits of advanced level courses (BIOL2000 and BIOL3000 level) of which 6 credits at BIOL3000 level, subject to prerequisite requirements.

*Important! Ultimate responsibility rests with students to ensure that the required pre-requisites and co-requisite of selected courses are fulfilled. Students must take and pass all required courses in the selected major or/and minor in order to satisfy the degree graduation requirements.*

### **Minor in Biotechnology** (for candidates admitted in 2007 or thereafter)

Technology leads our future. Biotechnology is relevant to many business sectors and our daily life. Students who are interested in the developments of biological sciences are highly recommended to take this Minor. You will learn the scientific principles underlying current biotechnological advances and will become literate in biotechnology business and advancements.

**Minimum Entry Requirement** : AL Biology or equivalent or a pass in BIOL0126 Fundamentals of Biology

**Minimum Credit Requirement** : 36 credits (12 credits introductory level & 24 credits advanced level courses)

**Impermissible Combination** : Major in Biotechnology

### **Required courses (36 credits)**

<b>1. Introductory level courses (12 credits)</b>	<b>Credits</b>
---	----------------

At least 12 credits of the following courses:

BIOC1001	Basic Biochemistry	<b>OR</b>	
BIOL1125	Introduction to Biochemistry		6
BIOL0129 (BIOL1119)	Introductory Microbiology		3
BIOL1106	Genetics		3
BIOL1122	Functional Biology		6

### **2. Advanced level courses (24 credits)**

BIOL2303	Introduction to Molecular Biology	6
----------	-----------------------------------	---

**Plus** at least 6 credits of the following courses:

BIOL3315	Animal Biotechnology	6
BIOL3316	Plant Biotechnology	6
BIOL3317	Microbial Biotechnology	6

**Plus** at least 12 credits of the following courses:

BIOL2004	Bioexploitation of Filamentous Fungi	3
BIOL2111	Molecular Microbiology	6
BIOL2112	Plant Physiology	6
BIOL2114	Plant Biochemistry and Molecular Biology	6
BIOL2116	Genetics I	6
BIOL2203	Reproduction & Reproductive Biotechnology	6
BIOL2205	Basic Immunology	6
BIOL2207	Endocrinology	6
BIOL2209	Developmental Biology	6
BIOL2215	Animal Physiology	6
BIOL2217	General Parasitology	3
BIOL2302	Fermentation Technology	6
BIOL2515	Food Microbiology	6
BIOL3212	Applied Immunology	6
BIOL3214	General Virology	6
BIOL3307	Biotechnology Industry	6
BIOL3522	Nutrigenomics	3

*Important! Ultimate responsibility rests with students to ensure that the required pre-requisites and co-requisite of selected courses are fulfilled. Students must take and pass all required courses in the selected major or/and minor in order to satisfy the degree graduation requirements.*

### **Minor in Chemistry (for candidates admitted in 2007 or thereafter)**

Why study Chemistry? Chemistry is both interesting and important. It is involved in almost everything you do. Chemistry occupies a central role in the natural sciences, it overlaps with other fields, and provides a fruitful source for important discoveries. For example, new discoveries in material sciences such as nanoscale materials cannot be realized without chemists. Astronomers now use results from chemical laboratories to search for new compounds in distant galaxies. Geologists analyse the structures of minerals and transformations between different forms of matter in the Earth's crust by using chemical principles of bonding and thermodynamics. Biologists try to understand the life process

by chemical language in the field like molecular biology and chemical genetics. Therefore, the Chemistry Department offers this Minor for those students who need a knowledge of chemistry for their major subjects or those who have an interest in studying chemistry at a higher level. Students are required to take introductory courses in general and analytical chemistry and one other chemistry course from selected areas. The advanced courses emphasize instrumental analysis and spectroscopic techniques. In addition, students may also choose specialized courses in different areas of chemistry such as organic, synthetic, materials, medicinal, environmental, or industrial chemistry as their electives in the second and third years. The Minor is essential to students who major in science-related subjects such as the biological, medical, materials and environmental sciences.

**Minimum Entry Requirement** : AL Chemistry or a pass in CHEM0004 Fundamental Chemistry or equivalent

**Minimum Credit Requirement** : 36 credits (12 credits introductory level & 24 credits advanced level courses)

**Impermissible Combination** : Major in Chemistry

#### **Required courses (36 credits)**

	Credits
--	---------

**1. Introductory level courses (12 credits)**

12 credits of the following courses:

CHEM1002	Chemistry: Principles and Concepts	6
CHEM1003	Chemistry: The Molecular World	6
CHEM1007	Basic Chemistry for Biological Sciences	6
CHEM1406	Basic Organic Chemistry	6

**2. Advanced level courses (24 credits)**

**Any** 24 credits of advanced level Chemistry courses (CHEM2000 or CHEM3000 level), subject to prerequisite requirements.

*Important! Ultimate responsibility rests with students to ensure that the required pre-requisites and co-requisite of selected courses are fulfilled. Students must take and pass all required courses in the selected major or/and minor in order to satisfy the degree graduation requirements.*

**Minor in Earth Sciences** (for candidates admitted in 2007 or thereafter)

To provide interested students an introduction to the different aspects of the discipline which may or may not be relevant to their major field of interest. Courses in physical geology and Earth history are offered in the first year followed by more advanced courses in the second and third year. A wide range of Earth Science courses are offered. A Minor in Earth Sciences is particularly suitable for students majoring in biochemistry, botany, chemistry, computing, ecology, economics, geography, mathematics, statistics, physics and zoology.

**Minimum Entry Requirement** : Nil

**Minimum Credit Requirement** : 36 credits (12 credits introductory level & 24 credits advanced level courses)

**Impermissible Combination** : Major in Earth Sciences

## **Required courses (36 credits)**

Credits		
<b>1. Introductory level courses (12 credits)</b>		
<b><u>Any</u></b>	two of the following three courses:	
EASC0105	Earth Through Time	6
EASC0118	Blue Planet	6
EASC0119	Solid Earth	6

## **2. Advanced level courses (24 credits)**

**Any** 24 credits of advanced level Earth Sciences courses (EASC2000 or EASC3000 level), subject to prerequisite requirements.

*Important! Ultimate responsibility rests with students to ensure that the required pre-requisites and co-requisite of selected courses are fulfilled. Students must take and pass all required courses in the selected major or/and minor in order to satisfy the degree graduation requirements.*

**Minor in Ecology & Biodiversity** (for candidates admitted in 2007 or thereafter)

Southeast Asia is extremely diverse in plants and animals, and Hong Kong has, for its size, a remarkable biodiversity. This Minor is an ideal introduction to the natural world, the species and ecosystems it comprises and the biological rules it follows. Students will first learn about general ecological principles and the local flora and fauna of the region. They will then be able to build upon this basic knowledge by selecting from among a wide range of courses that offer learning opportunities through practical and field work, traditional and virtual teaching, in more specialized areas of ecology and biodiversity.

**Minimum Entry Requirement** : Nil

**Minimum Credit Requirement** : 36 credits (12 credits introductory level & 24 credits advanced level courses)

**Impermissible Combination** : Major in Ecology & Biodiversity;  
Environmental Protection  
Minor in Environmental Protection

### **Required courses (36 credits)**

	<b>Credits</b>
<b>1. Introductory level courses (12 credits)</b>	
BIOL0601 (ECOL0020)      Ecology of Hong Kong	3
BIOL0603 (ECOL0040)      Ecology and Evolution	3
BIOL0604 (ECOL0041)      Evolutionary Diversity	6

The following is also recommended:

BIOL0605 (ECOL0042) Ecology Field Course 3

## **2. Advanced level courses (24 credits)**

**Plus** at least 24 credits of the following courses:

BIOL2606 (ECOL2004)	Environmental Microbiology	6
BIOL2607 (ECOL2005)	Fish Biology	6

BIOL2608 (ECOL2006)	Biometrics	6
BIOL2610 (ECOL2011)	Biological Oceanography	6
BIOL2611 (ECOL2013)	Systematics & Phylogenetics	6
BIOL2612 (ECOL2014)	Conservation Biology	6
BIOL2613 (ECOL2015)	Fungal Diversity	3
BIOL2615 (ECOL2023)	Freshwater Ecology	6
BIOL2616 (ECOL2024)	Plant Structure and Evolution	3
BIOL2617 (ECOL2028)	Coastal Ecology	6
BIOL2618 (ECOL2029)	How Humans Evolved	6
BIOL2619 (ECOL2032)	Terrestrial Ecology	6

*Important! Ultimate responsibility rests with students to ensure that the required pre-requisites and co-requisite of selected courses are fulfilled. Students must take and pass all required courses in the selected major or/and minor in order to satisfy the degree graduation requirements.*

#### **Minor in Environmental Protection** (for candidates admitted in 2007 or thereafter)

Managing and conserving the environment is increasingly recognized as an important and necessary challenge for modern Society. Preserving biological diversity, whether species, genes, populations or ecosystems, requires an understanding of a range of exciting new areas in the life sciences. This Minor will provide students with an appreciation of the depth and breadth of this important developing field. The lectures are enhanced by valuable laboratory and practical experience that should be applicable to a wide range of careers, and contribute to a better understanding of the world we live in.

**Minimum Entry Requirement** : Nil

**Minimum Credit Requirement** : 36 credits (12 credits introductory level & 24 credits advanced level courses)

**Impermissible Combination** : Major in Ecology & Biodiversity;  
Environmental Protection  
Minor in Ecology & Biodiversity

#### **Required courses (36 credits)**

##### **Credits**

##### **1. Introductory level courses (12 credits)**

At least 12 credits of the following courses:

BIOL0601 (ECOL0020)	Ecology of Hong Kong	3
BIOL0603 (ECOL0040)	Ecology and Evolution	3
BIOL0604 (ECOL0041)	Evolutionary Diversity	6
CHEM1007	Basic Chemistry for Biological Sciences	6

The following is also recommended:

BIOL0605 (ECOL0042)	Ecology Field Course	3
---------------------	----------------------	---

##### **2. Advanced level courses (24 credits)**

BIOL3622 (ECOL3027)	Environmental Impact Assessment	6
BIOL3624 (ECOL3034)	Environmental Monitoring and Remediation Techniques	6

**Plus** at least 12 credits of the following courses:

BIOL2606 (ECOL2004)	Environmental Microbiology	6
BIOL2608 (ECOL2006)	Biometrics	6
BIOL2612 (ECOL2014)	Conservation Biology	6

BIOL2614 (ECOL2016)	Environmental Toxicology	6
BIOL2619 (ECOL2032)	Terrestrial Ecology	6
CHEM2102	Environmental Chemistry	6
CHEM2202	Chemical Instrumentation	6

*Important! Ultimate responsibility rests with students to ensure that the required pre-requisites and co-requisite of selected courses are fulfilled. Students must take and pass all required courses in the selected major or/and minor in order to satisfy the degree graduation requirements.*

### **Minor in Food & Nutritional Science** (for candidates admitted in 2007 or thereafter)

This Minor is ideal for those who simply want to learn more about diet as part of their quest to promote personal health or for those who see knowledge in food and nutrition as complementary to their major study, be it biotechnology, chemistry, business or social science.

**Minimum Entry Requirement** : AL / AS Biology and AL / AS Chemistry or equivalent or a pass in BIOL0126 Fundamentals of Biology and CHEM0004 Fundamental Chemistry

**Minimum Credit Requirement** : 36 credits (12 credits introductory level & 24 credits advanced level courses)

**Impermissible Combination** : Major in Food & Nutritional Science

#### **Required courses (36 credits)**

		<b>Credits</b>
<b>1. Introductory level courses (12 credits)</b>		
BIOL0002	Introduction to Food and Nutritional Science	3
BIOL1123	Food Chemistry	3
BIOL1514	Nutrition and Metabolism	6

#### **2. Advanced level courses (24 credits)**

At least 24 credits of the following courses:

BIOL2004	Bioexploitation of Filamentous Fungi	3
BIOL2215	Animal Physiology	6
BIOL2302	Fermentation Technology	6
BIOL2501	Food Processing and Preservation	6
BIOL2503	Grain Production & Utilization	6
BIOL2505	Food Safety and Quality Management	6
BIOL2507	Meat and Dairy Science	6
BIOL2515	Food Microbiology	6
BIOL2517	Food Analysis	3
BIOL2519	Essential Nutrients & Functional Foods	6
BIOL2520	Food Toxicology	3
BIOL2521	Food Engineering	3
BIOL3516	Nutrition and Brain Function	3
BIOL3522	Nutrigenomics	3
BIOL3523	Principles of Chinese medicated Diet	3
BIOL3524	Diet and Disease	3
BIOL3525	Food Product Development	3

*Important! Ultimate responsibility rests with students to ensure that the required pre-requisites and co-requisite of selected courses are fulfilled. Students must take and pass all required courses in the selected major or/and minor in order to satisfy the degree graduation requirements.*

### **Minor in General Science** (for candidates admitted in 2007 or thereafter)

Science is an indispensable component of this modern world, with a significant impact to our daily lives. Be it the interaction between animals and their natural environment, the food in our daily diet, the synthesis of new materials (nanomaterials, polymeric and semiconducting materials), the mystery of the human gene, or the application of mathematics to solve problems. This Minor is suitable for non-Science students who are interested in exploring science and learning how scientists study the real world. The scientific knowledge, quantitative reasoning, logical and analytical thinking and sense of numeracy will be useful in various fields of finance, business, social sciences, arts and education. Students have the flexibility to gather courses in any area of interest.

**Minimum Entry Requirement** : Nil

**Minimum Credit Requirement** : 36 credits (12 credits introductory level & 24 credits advanced level courses)

**Impermissible Combination** : Nil (This Minor is only offered to non-Faculty of Science students.)

#### **Required courses (36 credits)**

##### **1. Introductory level courses (12 credits)**

At least 12 credits of any introductory level Science courses (level 0 & 1), subject to prerequisite requirements.

##### **2. Advanced level courses (24 credits)**

At least 24 credits of any advanced level Science courses (level 2 & 3), subject to prerequisite requirements.

*Important! Ultimate responsibility rests with students to ensure that the required pre-requisites and co-requisite of selected courses are fulfilled. Students must take and pass all required courses in the selected major or/and minor in order to satisfy the degree graduation requirements.*

### **Minor in Mathematics** (for candidates admitted in 2007 or thereafter)

Mathematics has been referred to as "our invisible culture". Most people agree mathematics finds applications ranging from traditional ones in the physical sciences and engineering to more recent ones in the life sciences, economics, finance and management. Yet, many are dazzled by achievements mathematics helps to bring about that they forget about mathematics itself! A Minor in Mathematics provides an initiation into the subject and will nurture quantitative reasoning, logical and analytical thinking, meticulous care to work, ability to conceptualize, problem-solving skill and innovative imagination.

**Minimum Entry Requirement<sup>#</sup>** : 1. HKCEE Additional Mathematics and AS Mathematics and Statistics; or  
2. AL Pure Mathematics; or  
3. a pass in MATH0201 (for those with HKCEE Math only) or a pass in MATH1804 (for those with AS Math & Stat only).

**Minimum Credit Requirement** : 36 credits (12 credits introductory level & 24 credits advanced level courses)

**Impermissible Combination** : Major in Mathematics

### **Required courses (36 credits)**

		<b>Credits</b>
<b>1. Introductory level courses (12 credits)<sup>1</sup></b>		
MATH1111	Linear Algebra	6
<b>Plus</b>	one of the following courses:	
MATH1211	Multivariable Calculus	6
MATH1805	University Mathematics B	6
MATH1813	Mathematical Methods for Actuarial Science	6

### **2. Advanced level courses (24 credits)**

**Any** 24 credits of advanced level Mathematics courses (MATH2000 or MATH3000 level), subject to prerequisite requirements.

Note: <sup>#</sup> Students with different mathematics background must consult the Department of Mathematics for advice on the bridging courses.

<sup>1</sup> Students are strongly advised to take also MATH1001.

*Important! Ultimate responsibility rests with students to ensure that the required pre-requisites and co-requisite of selected courses are fulfilled. Students must take and pass all required courses in the selected major or/and minor in order to satisfy the degree graduation requirements.*

### **Minor in Physics (for candidates admitted in 2007 or thereafter)**

The Minor in Physics is intended for students who would like to acquire a taste of the subject. The curriculum is designed with the flexibility for students with and without HKAL Physics/Pure Mathematics background. A large selection of elective courses is provided for students to pursue a wide range of topics from the small scale of nanomaterials to the large scale of astrophysics.

<b>Minimum Entry Requirement</b>	:	AL / AS Physics or AL Engineering Science; or a pass in PHYS00625 Physics by Inquiry
<b>Minimum Credit Requirement</b>	:	36 credits (12 credits introductory level & 24 credits advanced level courses)
<b>Impermissible Combination</b>	:	Major in Physics

\* Refer to the Physics Department website <http://www.physics.hku.hk> for suggested curriculum.

### **Required courses (36 credits)**

		<b>Credits</b>
<b>1. Introductory level courses (12 credits)</b>		
PHYS1413	Physics in a Nutshell	6
<b>Plus</b>	at least 6 credits of introductory level Physics course (PHYS0000 or PHYS1000 level) <sup>1</sup>	
<b>Or</b>		
PHYS1414	General Physics I	6
PHYS1415	General Physics II	6

### **2. Advanced level courses (24 credits)**

**Any** 24 credits of advanced level Physics courses (PHYS2000 or PHYS3000 level), subject to prerequisite requirements.

Note: <sup>1</sup> Students are strongly advised to take at least one of the following courses: PHYS1414 or PHYS1415 to allow for maximum flexibility in course selection for advanced level Physics courses.

*Important! Ultimate responsibility rests with students to ensure that the required pre-requisites and co-requisite of selected courses are fulfilled. Students must take and pass all required courses in the selected major or/and minor in order to satisfy the degree graduation requirements.*

### **Minor in Risk Management** (for candidates admitted in 2007 or thereafter)

The Minor in Risk Management enables students to gain exposure to financial and investment risks, and to various statistical techniques for modeling them. Specific attention is given to applications in financial and insurance problems.

**Minimum Entry Requirement** : Nil

**Minimum Credit Requirement** : 36 credits (12 credits introductory level & 24 credits advanced level courses)

**Impermissible Combination** : Major in Risk Management;  
Statistics  
Minor in Statistics

#### **Required courses (36 credits)**

	<b>Credits</b>
<b>1. Introductory level courses (12 credits)</b>	
STAT1301 Probability and Statistics I	6
<b>Or</b>	
STAT1306 Introductory Statistics	6
<b>Or</b>	
STAT0302 Business Statistics	6
<b>Plus</b>	
STAT1302 Probability and Statistics II	6
<b>Or</b>	
STAT1303 Data Management	6
<b>Or</b>	
One of the advanced level courses listed below	6
<b>2. Advanced level courses (24 credits)</b>	

At least 24 credits from the following courses:

STAT2309 The Statistics of Investment Risk	6
STAT2310 Risk Management and Insurance	6
STAT2311 Computer-aided Data Analysis	6
STAT2312 Data Mining	6
STAT2314 Business Forecasting	6
STAT2315 Practical Mathematics for Investment	6
STAT2806 Financial Economics	6
STAT3301 Time-series Analysis	6
STAT3305 Financial Data Analysis	6
STAT3308 Financial Engineering	6
STAT3812 Stochastic Calculus with Financial Applications	6

*Important! Ultimate responsibility rests with students to ensure that the required pre-requisites and co-requisite of selected courses are fulfilled. Students must take and pass all required courses in the selected major or/and minor in order to satisfy the degree graduation requirements.*

### **Minor in Statistics (for candidates admitted in 2007 or thereafter)**

The Minor in Statistics introduces to students important statistical concepts and provides them with exposure to applied statistical methodologies. A broad spectrum of courses is available for selection, covering topics which find applications in areas like business, finance, risk management, survey research, insurance, industry, medicine or computing.

**Minimum Entry Requirement** : Nil

**Minimum Credit Requirement** : 36 credits (12 credits introductory level & 24 credits advanced level courses)

**Impermissible Combination** : Major in Risk Management;  
Statistics  
Minor in Risk Management

#### **Required courses (36 credits)**

<b>1. Introductory level courses (12 credits)</b>	<b>Credits</b>
---	----------------

One of the following courses:

STAT0301	Elementary Statistical Methods	6
STAT0302	Business Statistics	6
STAT1301	Probability and Statistics I	6
STAT1306	Introductory Statistics	6

**Plus** at least 6 credits from the following courses:

STAT1302	Probability and Statistics II	6
STAT1303	Data Management	6
STAT1304	The Analysis of Sample Surveys	6

#### **2. Advanced level courses (24 credits)**

At least 24 credits from the following courses:

STAT2301	Linear Statistical Analysis	6
STAT2302	Statistical Inference	6
STAT2303	Probability Modelling	6
STAT2304	Design and Analysis of Experiments	6
STAT2305	Quality Control and Management	6
STAT2306	Business Logistics	6
STAT2307	Statistics in Clinical Medicine & Bio-medical Research	6
STAT2308	Statistical Genetics	6
STAT2309	The Statistics of Investment Risk	6
STAT2310	Risk Management and Insurance	6
STAT2311	Computer-aided Data Analysis	6
STAT2312	Data Mining	6
STAT2313	Marketing Engineering	6
STAT2314	Business Forecasting	6
STAT2315	Practical Mathematics for Investment	6

STAT2806	Financial Economics	6
STAT3301	Time-series Analysis	6
STAT3302	Multivariate Data Analysis	6
STAT3304	Computer-aided Statistical Modelling	6
STAT3305	Financial Data Analysis	6
STAT3306	Selected Topics in Statistics	6
STAT3308	Financial Engineering	6
STAT3316	Advanced Probability	6
STAT3317	Computational Statistics	6
STAT3811	Survival Analysis	6
STAT3812	Stochastic Calculus with Financial Applications	6

Note: The following combinations of courses are recommended for students interested in more focused areas:

- <sup>1</sup> Statistical theory and research methodology: STAT1301, STAT1302, STAT2301, STAT2302, STAT2303, STAT3316, STAT3301, STAT3302.
- <sup>2</sup> Finance and investment: STAT1303, STAT2301, STAT2309, STAT2310, STAT2311, STAT2314, STAT2315, STAT2806, STAT3301, STAT3305, STAT3308, STAT3812.
- <sup>3</sup> Business and management: STAT1303, STAT1304, STAT2301, STAT2305, STAT2306, STAT2311, STAT2312, STAT2313, STAT2314, STAT3302.
- <sup>4</sup> Biological sciences: STAT1303, STAT2301, STAT2303, STAT2304, STAT2307, STAT2308, STAT2311, STAT3811.
- <sup>5</sup> Information technology: STAT1303, STAT2311, STAT2312, STAT3317, STAT3304, STAT3305.

*Important! Ultimate responsibility rests with students to ensure that the required pre-requisites and co-requisite of selected courses are fulfilled. Students must take and pass all required courses in the selected major or/and minor in order to satisfy the degree graduation requirements.*

---

## **SECOND MAJOR AND MINOR OFFERED BY THE INSTITUTE OF HUMAN PERFORMANCE**

### **Second Major in Exercise Science**

The Major in Exercise Science is a multi-disciplinary programme of education, synthesising the biophysical, psycho-social and health aspects of exercise. It is for students who are interested in the scientific study of human movement, with a particular focus on the recognition, evaluation, rehabilitation and prevention of acute and chronic illnesses related to inactivity.

#### Programme Structure

Candidates who wish to major in Exercise Science must successfully complete the following courses:

- A. Junior level compulsory courses (24 credits)
  - PBSL1111 Kinetic anatomy (6 credits)
  - PBSL1114 Physiology for human movement (6 credits)
  - PBSL1120 Foundations of exercise science (6 credits)
  - PBSL1121 Physical activity and health (6 credits)
- B. Senior level courses (at least 48 credits of courses from the list below)
  - PBSL2229 Exercise physiology (6 credits)
  - PBSL2233 Biomechanics (6 credits)
  - PBSL2234 Fundamentals of motor control and learning (6 credits)

- PBSL2235 Measurement and promotion of physical activity (6 credits)  
 PBSL2236 Sport and exercise psychology (6 credits)  
 PBSL2200 Summer internship (0 credits)  
 PBSL3334 Advanced exercise physiology (6 credits)  
 PBSL3335 Advances in skill learning (6 credits)  
 PBSL3336 Exercise prescription and training (6 credits)  
 PBSL3337 Physical activity and disability (6 credits)  
 PBSL3338 Physical activity and diseases of inactivity (6 credits)  
 PBSL3339 Public health promotion of physical activity (6 credits)  
 PBSL3340 Special topic in exercise sciences (6 credits)  
 PBSL3998 Dissertation (12 credits)
- 

### **Minor in Exercise Science**

The Minor in Exercise Science provides an introduction to the discipline of exercise science and its application to health. It is for students who are curious about the scientific study of human movement and its various applications.

Candidates who wish to minor in Exercise Science must successfully complete the following courses:

- B. Junior level compulsory courses (12 credits)  
 PBSL1120 Foundations of exercise science (6 credits)  
 PBSL1121 Physical activity and health (6 credits)
- B. Senior level courses (at least 24 credits of courses from the list below)  
 PBSL2229 Exercise physiology (6 credits)  
 PBSL2233 Biomechanics (6 credits)  
 PBSL2234 Fundamentals of motor control and learning (6 credits)  
 PBSL2235 Measurement and promotion of physical activity (6 credits)  
 PBSL2236 Sport and exercise psychology (6 credits)  
 PBSL3334 Advanced exercise physiology (6 credits)  
 PBSL3335 Advances in skill learning (6 credits)  
 PBSL3336 Exercise prescription and training (6 credits)  
 PBSL3337 Physical activity and disability (6 credits)  
 PBSL3338 Physical activity and diseases of inactivity (6 credits)  
 PBSL3339 Public health promotion of physical activity (6 credits)  
 PBSL3340 Special topic in exercise sciences (6 credits)
- 

### **Elective Courses**

#### **1. Centre of Buddhist Studies**

No major or minor in Buddhist Studies will be offered to social sciences students but candidates may select the following courses as elective courses:

##### *Senior Level*

- BSTC0001. Making sense of Ch'an (Zen) (6 credits)  
 BSTC0002. Life and Buddhism (6 credits)  
 BSTC0003. Buddhism and contemporary moral problems (6 credits)  
 BSTC0004. The art of living (6 credits)

## 2. School of English

No major or minor in English will be offered to social sciences students but candidates may select the following courses as elective courses:

### *Junior Level*

ENGL1009. Introduction to English studies (6 credits)

### *Senior Level*

Semesters III to VI

- ENGL2002. Language in society (6 credits)
- ENGL2003. The history of English (6 credits)
- ENGL2004. English syntax (6 credits)
- ENGL2007. Literary linguistics (6 credits)
- ENGL2010. English novel I (6 credits)
- ENGL2011. English novel II (6 credits)
- ENGL2012. Contemporary literary theory (6 credits)
- ENGL2022. Women, feminism and writing I (6 credits)
- ENGL2027. Text and discourse in contemporary English (6 credits)
- ENGL2030. World Englishes (6 credits)
- ENGL2031. The semantics and pragmatics of English (6 credits)
- ENGL2033. English novel III (6 credits)
- ENGL2035. Reading poetry (6 credits)
- ENGL2037. Science fiction (6 credits)
- ENGL2039. Language and gender (6 credits)
- ENGL2040. Asian American literature (6 credits)
- ENGL2045. Travel writing (6 credits)
- ENGL2046. English words (6 credits)
- ENGL2047. English discourse structures and strategies (6 credits)
- ENGL2048. Language and jargon (6 credits)
- ENGL2049. The history of English: sociolinguistic perspectives (6 credits)
- ENGL2050. English corpus linguistics (6 credits)
- ENGL2054. Race, language and identity (6 credits)
- ENGL2055. American gothic: Haunted homes (6 credits)
- ENGL2057. Text and image (6 credits)
- ENGL2058. Narrative prose: a linguistic investigation (6 credits)
- ENGL2059. American drama and American film (6 credits)
- ENGL2062. The history of Western linguistics (6 credits)
- ENGL2064. Advanced English syntax (6 credits)
- ENGL2065. Meaning and metaphor (6 credits)
- ENGL2066. Orientalism and linguistics (6 credits)
- ENGL2069. Form and meaning (6 credits)
- ENGL2074. Postcolonial readings (6 credits)
- ENGL2075. The idea of China (6 credits)
- ENGL2076. Romanticism (6 credits)
- ENGL2078. The novel today (6 credits)
- ENGL2079. Shakespeare (6 credits)
- ENGL2080. Women, feminism and writing II (6 credits)
- ENGL2082. Modern literary criticism (6 credits)
- ENGL2084. Modernism and short fiction (6 credits)
- ENGL2087. Persuasion (6 credits)
- ENGL2089. Making Americans: Literature as ritual and renewal (6 credits)
- ENGL2090. The moving production of America: reading recent films (6 credits)
- ENGL2091. Comedy and Asian American drama (6 credits)
- ENGL2092. Postcolonial English (6 credits)

- ENGL2093. Literary islands: English poetry and prose from the South Pacific and the Caribbean (6 credits)
- ENGL2094. Cultural approaches to second language varieties of English (6 credits)
- ENGL2095. The East: Asia in English writing (6 credits)
- ENGL2096. Creative Writing (12 credits)
- ENGL2097. Imagining Hong Kong (6 credits)
- ENGL2098. Call and response: Southeast Asian literature written in English (6 credits)
- ENGL2099. Language, identity, and Asian Americans (6 credits)
- ENGL2100. Language and social interaction (6 credits)
- ENGL2101. Culture and society (6 credits)
- ENGL2102. Theories of beauty (6 credits)
- ENGL2103. Language and new media (6 credits)
- ENGL2104. Language in the USA (6 credits)
- ENGL2105. Contemporary North American novelists (6 credits)
- ENGL2106. Childhood, reading and literature in the nineteenth century (6 credits)
- ENGL2107. Literature, culture and gender at the *Fin de Siècle* (6 credits)
- ENGL2108. Shakespeare's language (6 credits)
- ENGL2109. Writing diaspora (6 credits)
- ENGL2110. Writing back (6 credits)
- ENGL2111. Seeing Australia (6 credits)
- ENGL2112. An introduction to the history of English (6 credits)
- ENGL2113. Conrad and others (6 credits)
- ENGL2115. Theories of language acquisition I (6 credits)
- ENGL2116. Theories of language acquisition II (6 credits)
- ENGL2117. English phonology and morphology (6 credits)

#### Semester V/VI

- ENGL3032. Advanced Topics in English Studies (12 credits)
- ENGL3033. Research seminar in English studies (6 credits)
- ENGL3034. Research seminar in English literary studies (6 credits)
- ENGL3035. Research seminar in literary theory (6 credits)
- ENGL3036. Research seminar in English linguistics (6 credits)
- ENGL3037. Research seminar in language & society (6 credits)

*Candidates admitted to this programme could refer to p.1336 to p.1686 for courses offered by other Faculties and Centres.*